## CONTENTS

**TE RĀRANGI UPOKO**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mihi</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The journey</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guide to this Plan</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part One: Kei Te Pūtake o Aoraki te Mana e Huna Ana</strong></td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vision for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A living Treaty partnership</strong></td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1 Aoraki Matatū</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Aoraki Huanui Rau</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 He Kapua Kei Ruka i a Aoraki – Whakarewa, Whakarewa</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki</strong></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Nohoaka Place</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Aroarokahe Place</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Haupapa Place 1</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Pae Tata Place</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 Pae Tawhiti</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Part Three: Aoraki Whakaoka Raki</strong></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Glossary</strong></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Appendices</strong></td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Closing words</strong></td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 2</td>
<td>World Heritage Area and Dark Sky Reserve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 3</td>
<td>Ecosystem priorities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4</td>
<td>Visitor management zones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 4.1</td>
<td>Visitor management zones - detail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 5</td>
<td>Desired tranquility outcomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 6</td>
<td>Potential additions to the Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 7</td>
<td>Aircraft access zones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 7.1</td>
<td>Heliski landing zones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 8</td>
<td>Places overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 9</td>
<td>Nohoaka Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 10</td>
<td>Aircraft landing zones - Nohoaka Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 11</td>
<td>Village and front country spatial plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 12</td>
<td>Village zoning plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 13</td>
<td>Village flood vulnerability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 14</td>
<td>Aroarokahe Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 15</td>
<td>Aircraft landing zones - Aroarokahe Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 16</td>
<td>Haupapa Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 17</td>
<td>Aircraft landing zones - Haupapa Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 18</td>
<td>Pae Tata Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 19</td>
<td>Aircraft landing zones - Pae Tata Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 20</td>
<td>Pae Tawhiti Place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map 21</td>
<td>Aircraft landing zones - Pae Tawhiti Place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## PHOTO CREDITS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page number</th>
<th>Photographer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front cover</td>
<td>Sarah Wilson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 13</td>
<td>Undersoul Photography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 21</td>
<td>Undersoul Photography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 27</td>
<td>Undersoul Photography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 53</td>
<td>Danilo Hegg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 81</td>
<td>Undersoul Photography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 84</td>
<td>Courtney Bennett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 113</td>
<td>Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 125</td>
<td>Courtney Bennett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 136</td>
<td>Courtney Bennett</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 144</td>
<td>Kiersten McKinley, Department of Conservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page 150</td>
<td>Danilo Hegg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Mihi

Ko te kākahu o te mauka Ariki o Aoraki
To the cloak that covers the mountain, Aoraki

Me tōna whānau ko Rakirua, Rakiroa, Rarakiroa
And his family and brothers Rakirua, Rakiroa and Rarakiroa

Nā te mauka o Kakiroa me Horokōau
Over to Mount Sefton and Mount Tasman

Ko te whānau o Kā Tiritiri o Te Moana
And to the rest of the family of the Southern Alps

Nā te taha tāne a Haupapa
To the male side of the Tasman Glacier

Ki te taha wahine a Aroarokahe
And to the female side and the Hooker Valley

Huri noa ki te awa tapu ki Kā Roimata o Aoraki
Then over to the source, to the “Tears of Aoraki”

Nā te roto o Pūkaki, ko te roto tapu o Takapō
And on to the sacred lakes of Pūkaki and Takapō

Nā te roto o Ōhau, ko te whenua o Te Manahuna
And to Lake Ōhau and the valley of Te Manahuna

Mā te huarahi ki te tīhi o te mauka ko Te Ruataniwha
And travelling the ancient path to the mountain, Te Ruataniwha

Huri noa ki Te Ao Mārama!
And then to the world of light, Te Ao Mārama!

Nā te wharenui o Te Whakaahua-a-raki nō Te Maiharoa
And on to the place of the whare of the chief, Te Maiharoa

Ko Te Poho o Rakitāmau
And the burial mound on Māori Hummock

Nā Te Kaihikihiki ki Ōtamatakou
And on to Ōtematata

Nā Te Warokurī ki Te Awakino
And Te Warokurī and Te Awakino

Nā Te Kohurau ki Ōteake
And the mountain Te Kohurau and the place, Ōteake

Na Ōtekaieke ki Te Maerewhenua
And Ōtekaieke and Duntroon

Nā Te Awamako ki Te Puna o Maru
On to Te Awamako and the settlement of Te Puna o Maru

Nā Te Korotiupa ke te kāika tūturu, ko te whare Tapu o Matiti
And finally arriving at the Waitaki river mouth and the house, Matiti
Welcome to the draft Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan, which sets out the proposed management regime for the national park for the next 10 years.

Each national park has a management plan. This is the third review of the original plan prepared for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park since its establishment in 1953. This Plan has been developed in partnership with Kāi Tahu and in consultation with the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board. It reflects their views and aspirations for the Park, together with the views of iwi, the community, conservation partners and stakeholders with interests in the Park gathered during the drafting of the Plan.

Kaitiaki rūnaka are deeply invested in the wellbeing and future management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, and the peaks and other landforms within the Park. For this reason the Department has worked closely with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to develop this Plan, which has resulted in Kāi Tahu values and aspirations being embedded throughout the document – particularly the idea that the mountains within the Park are rangatira of great mana within the Kāi Tahu world view. Kāi Tahu whānui have a strong and enduring relationship with Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin, and in particular Aoraki/Mount Cook, who is seen as both an ancestor and the ancestral mountain of the iwi.

The Plan outlines the natural, cultural, historic, recreation and engagement values associated with the Park and the significant issues currently facing the Park. These issues include ongoing access within the Park, including increasing visitor pressure, particularly in the front country areas; climate change and retreating glaciers; managing tranquillity and natural quiet; and protecting biodiversity integrity.

The Department now invites submissions on the draft Plan. Those wishing to be heard in support of their submissions will have the opportunity to do so.

**Andy Roberts**  
Director, Operations, Eastern South Island/Kāihautū, Matarautaki

**Tewera King**  
Representative for Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua

**Sue Eddington**  
Representative for Te Rūnanga o Waihao

**David Higgins**  
Representative for Te Rūnanga o Moeraki

**Sam Newton**  
Chair of the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board
Map 1 Overview

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
Guide to this Plan

The National Parks Act 1980 requires a management plan to be prepared for each national park to provide for the management of that Park, and that the Plan is reviewed at intervals of not more than 10 years. This management plan for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (the Park) updates and replaces the previous Plan from 2004. The Plan describes how the Department will manage Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, on behalf of the New Zealand public, in accordance with the National Parks Act 1980, the General Policy for National Parks 2005 and the Canterbury (Waitaha) Conservation Management Strategy 2016. It provides for integrated Park management and preservation.

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is a place of beauty and awe. For many people it is also a place of great mana. This management plan outlines the ways that the mana of this national park will be upheld by the Department of Conservation over the next 10 years alongside Kāi Tahu, the mana whenua of this region, and the Department’s Treaty partner.

The Plan acknowledges Kāi Tahu as the mana whenua over the lands and waters within the Park, and as such they are the Department’s primary partner under the Treaty of Waitangi in relation to the Park.

Internationally the Park has status through its inclusion within the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area and the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve, which recognise the internationally outstanding natural values of the Park. The Plan gives recognition to this status and to the Department’s obligations to manage the Park in such a way that the integrity of these values is preserved.

Plan structure

This Plan has been written in partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka, who have taken this opportunity to share the mana they see within the Park with readers of this Plan. This has been done through gifting whakataukī (Kāi Tahu proverbs), which have been used to guide the Parts and sections within it. These whakataukī all relate to Aoraki/Mount Cook and the other peaks within the Park, and remind the reader that these are not just mountains – and this is not just a national park. In Kāi Tahu eyes, this area is the home of important ancestors who have their own mana, character and history. The whakataukī chosen all relate to the leadership values that Aoraki and the other peaks represent as rākatira within Kāi Tahu histories, as a way of inspiring all readers to embody these leadership attributes in their daily lives.

The parts and sections of the Plan are as follows.

Part One: Kei Te Pūtaki o Aoraki te Mana e Huna Ana

This whakataukī speaks of the mana embedded in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin area, recognising Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park as a special and important place locally, nationally and internationally.

This Part provides a vision and framework for integrated management across the whole Park:

- Vision for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park
- A living Treaty partnership
Part 1.1: Aoraki Matatū – this whakataukī encourages people to stand tall and strong like Aoraki, and to be inspired by this rakitira and his leadership position within Te Waipounamu/South Island and Aotearoa/New Zealand as our highest peak. This section of the Plan introduces Aoraki – the ancestor of Kā Tahu whānui who is now embodied by Aoraki/Mount Cook – and describes the intrinsic values of Aoraki and the surrounding area of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including his wider whānau, and their formation and features.

Part 1.2: Aoraki Huanui Rau – this whakataukī alludes to the many different opportunities that Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park provides – from habitat to sustenance to recreational activities – and likens these to opportunities and resources that rakatira like Aoraki and his relations provide for their people. This section identifies the human interactions and values associated with Aoraki and the wider Park, including natural, cultural, historic, recreational and engagement values and uses. It sets out the priorities and direction for achieving integrated management of these values within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Part 1.3: He kapua kei ruka i a Aoraki, whakarewa whakarewa – this whakataukī alludes to the fact that there are appropriate ways to engage with a rakatira or person of rank. This section includes the overarching objectives and policies for managing activities across the whole Park, which is likened to guidance for how engagement should be undertaken with rakatira, such as those embodied by Aoraki and the other peaks within the Park.

Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki

This whakataukī reminds the reader that no leader stands in isolation – all leaders are surrounded and supported by others, in the same way that Aoraki/Mount Cook is only one part of the wider environment within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Five Places have been recognised within the Park based on commonality of landscapes, ecosystems, values, uses and management issues. For each Place the key values and management considerations are identified, with planned outcomes to achieve over the life of the Plan, and policies and milestones to guide people’s interactions with the environment. The Places identified within the Park are:

- **Nohoaka Place** – includes Aoraki/Mount Cook village and all major roads within the front country of the Park
- **Aroarokaehe Place** – includes the Hooker and Mueller valleys and glaciers, and extends north to Aoraki/Mount Cook, east over the Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range to include all of the tōpuni, and south to the Park entrance at Birch Hill.
- **Haupapa Place** – includes all of the Tasman valley within the Park, but excluding the western slopes of the Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range within the tōpuni.
- **Pae Tata Place** – includes the whole of the Murchison valley above its confluence with the Tasman River.
- **Pae Tawhiti Place** – includes the whole Godley catchment above where the Godley River enters the Park.

Part Three: Aoraki Whakaoka Raki

This whakataukī speaks of the way Aoraki/Mount Cook reaches towards the sky and stands taller than all others, in the same way that leaders always strive for excellence and push through obstacles to achieve things that previously seemed out of reach. This section includes the implementation, monitoring, reporting and milestones, to identify whether the Department is achieving the Plan’s directions, and striving for excellence in the same way that a rakatira does.

Glossary

Appendices
Interpretation

Outcomes describe the desired future state of a Place and reflect the changes the Department wants to achieve over the term of the Plan to meet the statutory requirements of the National Parks Act 1980: to preserve and protect the intrinsic values of that Place and, consistent with this, to provide for the enjoyment of the public. Outcomes guide Park management and decision-making at Place.

Objectives describe how the Department intends to achieve the outcomes for the Park and for each Place. They support national directions and the aspirations of kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the community to achieve integrated management for the whole Park. They also guide decision-making.

Policies provide detailed guidance to achieve an objective and/or outcome. They describe the actions to apply in Park management and decision-making.

Milestones identify specific measurable steps to achieve the vision, objectives, outcomes and policies. The Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and kaitiaki rūnaka use milestones to annually monitor and advise on the implementation of this Plan.

The Glossary defines words and phrases used in this Plan.

The operative parts of this management plan that have legal effect are the objectives, outcomes, policies and glossary.

The objectives and policies in Part 1.2 Aoraki Huanui Rau and Part 1.3 He kapua kei ruka i a Aoraki, whakarewa whakarewa apply to the whole of the Park, while more specific provisions for each Place are found in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki.

All the Plan provisions need to be read alongside one another, as many are interconnected. If an inconsistency arises between Part One: Kei Te Pūtake o Aoraki te Mana e Huna Ana and Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki, the more specific provisions in Part Two will apply.

Together, all parts of this Plan ensure integrated management across the Park, with adjoining areas of public conservation lands and waters, and nationally. The policies and objectives need to be read alongside the provisions in the Canterbury (Waitaha) Conservation Management Strategy, which provides the strategic context for management of lands and waters in the national park.

The Kāi Tahu dialect uses the ‘k’ interchangeably with the ‘ng’. The preference of kaitiaki rūnaka is to use a ‘k’, so in this Plan the iwi is known as Kāi Tahu rather than Ngāi Tahu, and, for example, rūnanga become rūnaka. In this Plan the ‘k’ will be used in all Te Reo Māori words except for legal names and references to legislation. For further explanation of Māori terms, please see in-text explanations or the glossary.
## Interpretation

### Policies

1. Give legal effect to the objectives, policies, outcomes and glossary in this Plan.
2. Give precedence to the outcomes and policies in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki, where they differ from the objectives or policies in Part One: Kei Te Pūtake o Aoraki te Mana e Huna Ana.
3. Interpret the words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ in the policies in this Plan as follows:
   a) ‘will’ is used where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers;
   b) ‘should’ is used where there is a strong expectation of the outcome, without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers and a departure from such a policy requires the decision-maker to be satisfied exceptional circumstances exist; and
   c) ‘may’ is used where the intention is to allow flexibility in decision-making.
Part One:
Kei Te Pūtake o Aoraki te Mana e Huna Ana

As the whakataukī above states, at the base of Aoraki there is mana hidden within the landscape – including within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. While this mana may be hidden to some, it is obvious to many people. While many feel this mana in their own special ways, for Kāi Tahu whānui this mana radiates from Aoraki/Mount Cook and his surrounding peaks – all of whom are ancestors and rakatira within the Kāi Tahu world view. This part of the Plan introduces the reader to the mana hidden within this landscape, the mana of Aoraki and his whānau, and how the Department commits to manage and uphold the mana of these rakatira and their home.
Vision for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

A vision for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

*Ki te tūohu koe me he mauka teitei – ko Aoraki anake.*

*If we must bow our heads, let it be to Aoraki, the loftiest mountain.*

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is a place of awe, inspiration, and natural beauty.

It is a place where people experience the beauty and delight of the mountain environment in a way that inspires them and increases their connection to it, including feeling the mana of the Kāi Tahu ancestor Aoraki and his wider whānau.

Respect for Aoraki and his whānau and the kaitiaki role of Kāi Tahu is expressed throughout the Park and directs a pursuit of excellence in all activities and developments. The partnership between the Department and Kāi Tahu is obvious in all decisions made affecting the Park.

The Park’s indigenous nature is thriving and recognised for its internationally significant natural values and landscapes. Continued preservation of the intrinsic values defines any future development within the Park.

Resilience and sustainability underpin all management decisions and practices within the Park, responding to changing hazards and pressures from natural processes and visitors.

New Zealanders care deeply about the Park and take pride in sharing its special values with international visitors.

The Park vision was developed in partnership with Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua, Te Rūnanga o Waihao, Te Rūnanga o Moeraki, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, and in consultation with key stakeholders and the public. It establishes a united Park management approach and guides advocacy, education and community engagement.
The Plan’s text and provisions reflect the vision, consistent with preserving the Park’s natural, historic and cultural values, and ensuring the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public.

The Park vision links to the Department’s national long-term vision:

**New Zealand is the greatest living space on Earth**

*Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Aotearoa, he wāhi noho i te ao*

The long-term vision is aspirational and challenges the Department to connect with others to achieve it. In doing so, it requires the Department to build empathy, trust and understanding with both traditional and non-traditional audiences to engage in this common vision.

Conservation protects New Zealand’s natural capital. Conserving and protecting our natural resources and heritage is an essential investment in New Zealand’s long-term wellbeing and prosperity.

The Department provides leadership, inspiring and involving others to achieve more conservation together, as reflected in the Department’s overarching purpose:

**Conservation leadership for our nature**

*Tākina te hī, tiakina, te hā o te Āo Tūroa*

The Department has four intermediate outcomes and eight stretch goals (from the Statement of Intent 2016–2020), which support the national vision and guide its work. The Statement of Intent and this Plan inform the Department’s annual business planning, targeting resources to achieve the vision for New Zealand, and the Plan’s vision and outcomes.

The objectives, policies and milestones identified in Part 1.2 Aoraki Huanui Rau reflect each of the Department’s intermediate outcomes and stretch goals. Together they provide for integrated management of the Park within a national context.
New Zealand is the greatest living space on Earth
Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Aotearoa, hei wāhi noho i te ao

A living treaty partnership based on shared values for the benefit of Aotearoa New Zealand

### The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

- Ecosystem representation
- Species persistence
- Iconic features and species
- Locally treasured partnerships
- Lands, waters and species held

50% of New Zealand’s natural ecosystems are benefiting from pest management.

90% of our threatened species across New Zealand’s ecosystems are managed to enhance their populations.

50 freshwater ecosystems are restored from ‘mountains to the sea’.

A nationwide network of marine protected areas is in place, representing New Zealand’s marine ecosystems.

### Our history is brought to life and protected

- New Zealanders engage in/value historic heritage
- Historic heritage protected/conserved

The stories of 50 Historic Icon sites are told and protected.

### New Zealanders and our visitors are enriched by outdoor experiences

- Icon destinations
- Gateway destinations
- Locally Treasured destinations
- Backcountry destinations

50% of international holiday visitors come to New Zealand to connect with our natural places.

90% of New Zealanders’ lives are enriched through connection to our nature.

### New Zealanders connect and contribute to conservation

- Conservation and identity
- More conservation achieved by others
- New Zealanders’ well-being and conservation

Whānau, hapū and iwi are able to practise their responsibilities as kaitiaki of natural and cultural resources on public conservation lands and waters.

---

**Vision:**

50+ years

**Intermediate outcomes by year 50**

**Stretch goals and key priorities**

New Zealanders have their say on what places and species they value, through conservation management strategies and management plans.

New Zealanders receive reports on the places and spaces they value.

New Zealanders connect and contribute to conservation.

Whānau, hapū and iwi are able to practise their responsibilities as kaitiaki of natural and cultural resources on public conservation lands and waters.

Pest management
Species management
Restoration
Legal protection

Heritage landmarks and icons

Long-term upgrades of 4 iconic destinations
Pike River experience
Pouakai Crossing upgrade
Engaging others in destinations and networks

Healthy Nature/Healthy People
Conservation/Environmental Education Strategy
Our Nature
Reporting contribution of others

Pike River experience
Pouakai Crossing upgrade
Engaging others in destinations and networks

Participation
Education and communication

Capable and safe Department of Conservation

- Core management disciplines
- Working with Māori
- Partnering and collaborating
- Safety and well-being
- Leadership

Priorities (for years 1–4 see Table 1 overleaf)

Annual outputs

Capability: safety and leadership
A living Treaty partnership

Treaty of Waitangi and Treaty partner obligations

The Department acknowledges Kāi Tahu, the iwi who hold mana whenua status over much of Te Waipounamu, including the lands within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. While the lands within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park are significant to the whole iwi, three papatipu rūnaka (tribal bodies) are seen as the kaitiaki rūnaka – the rūnaka who have a specific responsibility to Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin, within which Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is situated. These are Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua, Te Rūnanga o Waihao and Te Rūnanga o Moeraki.

Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua is centred at Temuka, South Canterbury, around Arowhenua Marae. Their takiwā extends from the Rakaia River to the Waitaki River (sharing interests with Ngai Tūāhuriri between Hakatere and Rakaia), and from there inland to Aoraki and the Main Divide.

Te Rūnanga o Waihao is centred at Wainono, South Canterbury, around Waihao Marae. Their takiwā shares interests with Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua to Waitaki, and extends inland to Omarama and the Main Divide.

Te Rūnanga o Moeraki is centred on Moeraki, North Otago around Moeraki Marae. Their takiwā extends from the Waitaki River to the Waihemo River, and inland to the Main Divide.

While these rūnaka have a specific kaitiaki responsibility for Aoraki and the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin, it is important to remember that Aoraki is the ancestral mountain of Kāi Tahu whānui, and as such has deep importance to all Kāi Tahu, not just the kaitiaki rūnaka. Kāi Tahu whānui is defined as the collective of individuals who descend from the primary hapū of Waitaha, Ngāti Mamoe, and Kāi Tahu, namely Kāti Kurī, Kāti Irakehu, Kāti Huirapa, Ngāi Tūāhuriri, and Kāi Te Ruahihiki. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is the iwi authority and the representative body of Kāi Tahu whānui.

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule (including the National Parks Act 1980) must be interpreted and administered to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). Where there is an inconsistency between the conservation legislation and the principles, the provisions of the relevant Act apply. Section 2 of General Policy for National Parks 2005 outlines the Department’s Treaty obligations.
The Department also has specific responsibilities under the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (the Settlement), which provide a practical framework for assisting the Treaty partnership between Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Crown. The legal mechanisms established through the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 provide for Kāi Tahu rakatirataka and its expression through kaitiakitaka, and the basis for an enduring partnership between Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Crown. This includes:

- active and shared management and decision-making with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, in managing Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and resources of importance to Kāi Tahu
- recognition of the kaitiaki rights and responsibilities, and associated mātauraka, of Kāi Tahu
- enabling Kāi Tahu to undertake customary practices, including access to and use of cultural materials and mahika kai
- protecting Kāi Tahu values and enhancing Kāi Tahu connection with Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park
- enabling Kāi Tahu to explore and develop opportunities to support intergenerational wellbeing
- implementing the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

The above actions require a partnership framework to detail how the Treaty partnership will be implemented over the life of the Plan and beyond. Policies 1 and 2 (below) signal the commitment of the Department and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to work together to establish the necessary mechanisms and processes for active and shared management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, in a manner consistent with kaitiaki responsibilities and legislation.

The mechanisms and processes, once developed, will provide detail on how active and shared management can occur consistently with the Minister’s and the Department’s statutory responsibilities. They will identify opportunities for shared decision-making on Park management and increased involvement in the shared considerations of authorisations.

Achieving a sustainable, living Treaty partnership underpins this Plan. The objectives and policies that follow apply to all the Department’s activities throughout Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
### Objective

1. The Treaty partnership with Kāi Tahu is strengthened and maintained in a manner consistent with the Settlement and legislation to:
   a) enable Kāi Tahu rakatirataka and the exercise of kaitiakitaka by Kāi Tahu;
   b) facilitate recognition of Kāi Tahu connection with the land, waters, mahika kai and taoka of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
   c) enhance opportunities for Kāi Tahu representations of ahi kā;
   d) incorporate Kāi Tahu mātauraka, including traditional management practices, into Park management;
   e) support intergenerational Kāi Tahu wellbeing; and
   f) protect the natural, cultural and historic values of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

### Policies

1. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to:
   a) develop and implement a partnership engagement framework identifying the principles and mechanisms to deliver outcomes that strengthen and maintain an enduring partnership in the management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
   b) identify and implement shared decision-making at all levels and across management and governance, where consistent with legislation, including developing mechanisms to:
      i) provide for shared consideration of authorisation applications before a decision is made by the Minister or their delegate; and
      ii) ensure mātauraka Kāi Tahu, including traditional management practices, are recognised and incorporated into Park management.

2. Support kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to:
   a) enable the exercise of Kāi Tahu kaitiaki rights and responsibilities for natural and cultural resources, where consistent with legislation, including:
      i) managing indigenous species and the ecosystems they inhabit;
      ii) identifying and implementing opportunities for shared management or devolved management to kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, of areas, specific sites and/or species of significance to Kāi Tahu whānui;
      iii) improving access to, and customary use of, cultural materials and mahika kai species;
      iv) establishing a customary authorisation system for native species managed by kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu;
      v) ensuring engagement with kaitiaki rūnaka when developing relationships with others in the Park;
      vi) communicating Kāi Tahu history and values to Park visitors, and ensuring that the mechanisms and information used are authorised by kaitiaki rūnaka;
      vii) seeking to uphold Kāi Tahu tikaka and kawa where iwi or hapū from outside the Kāi Tahu takiwā are involved in the Park;
      viii) identifying and implementing mechanisms to support Kāi Tahu ability to access and use ancestral lands and taoka to support intergenerational Kāi Tahu wellbeing;
Policies continued

b) add cultural criteria to the Statement of Outstanding Universal Values for Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area and achieve dual heritage listing;

c) identify and implement measures to build Kāi Tahu capability and capacity in managing land, water and resources in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including mechanisms involving sharing of knowledge, training and employment opportunities, and educational programmes; and

d) ensure Kāi Tahu tikaka is respected and followed in situations where tūpāpaku and/or kōiwi (human remains) are found within the Park.


Milestones

In a manner consistent with legislation:

1. Developed mechanisms to achieve shared decision-making for the Department and Kāi Tahu (Year 3).

2. Developed and implemented a customary authorisation system to improve Kāi Tahu access to and customary use of cultural materials in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 3).

3. Supported the initiation by Kāi Tahu of the relevant statutory processes for investigating the addition of cultural criteria to the inscription for the Te Wāhipounamu South West World Heritage Area (Year 3).

4. Implemented mechanisms for shared decision-making between the Department and Kāi Tahu (Year 5).

5. Reported on progress for adding cultural criteria to the inscription for the Te Wāhipounamu South West World Heritage Area (Year 5).

6. Successfully realised shared decision-making between the Department and Kāi Tahu (Year 10).

7. Improved Kāi Tahu access to, and customary use and management of, cultural materials including mahika kai in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 10).

8. Reported on progress for adding cultural criteria to the inscription for the Te Wāhipounamu South West World Heritage Area (Year 10).
1.1 Aoraki Matatū

“Aoraki Matatū” is a phrase encouraging people to stand tall and strong like Aoraki. It reminds Kāi Tahu to be inspired by their ancestral mountain and its leadership position within Te Waipounamu and Aotearoa as our highest peak. Kāi Tahu whānui see Aoraki not just as a mountain peak, but as an ancestor who stands among us all. As this whakatauki alludes to, this tipuna has strong leadership attributes that people aspire to instil in themselves and today’s youth – standing strong in your identity, steadfast in your beliefs, and being a leader amongst others.

Aoraki is not the only leader that people can associate with the Park. There are others such as the wider whānau of peaks within Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin, Sir Edmund Hillary and other notable climbers, early Kāi Tahu guides, prominent individuals who have peaks named after them, and other local leaders whose greatness people can aspire to. Through the phrase “Aoraki Matatū” we remind ourselves of the mana of Aoraki – and also of other leaders – and the leadership values they embody.
1.1.1 Who Is Aoraki?

Aoraki is an entity with his own mauri. His resting place within Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin is a place of awe, of mana, and of cultural significance for many people. For Kāi Tahu whānui, Aoraki and his surrounding peaks are ancestors frozen in stone by time. Like any other elders in Māori and Kāi Tahu culture, they are afforded great respect.

The Kāi Tahu tipuna Te Māmaru recited the creation of the world in the following way: He started with the vast ages of darkness, Te Pō. From this stage, came Te Ao (the day), followed by Te Ao Mārama (the bright day). Then followed in sequential order the creation stages of Te Ao Tūroa (the long-standing day), Te Kore-tē-whiwhia (the unattainable void), Te Kore-tē-rāwea (the intangible void), Te Kore-tē-tāmaua (the unstable void), and Te Kore-matua (the parentless). The last stage was Te Mākū (the emergence of moisture). In due course Te Mākū – a void with the potential for life – coupled with Mahoranui-a-Tea, from which came Rakinui (the Sky Father). Rakinui coupled with Pokohaurua-Te-Pō and Papatūanuku (the Earth Mother), and from them came the many deities that make up the Kāi Tahu cosmology. It was during this time where deities were shaping the landscape that Aoraki arrived in Te Waipounamu alongside his whānau, and became frozen into stone where they now stand as the many landforms and peaks scattered across Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin. Due to this whakapapa, Aoraki and his wider whānau are seen by Kāi Tahu whānui as links between the cosmological world of the gods and the present generations, binding physical and spiritual elements together.

Non-Māori also feel the mana that this place has. The highest peak in New Zealand, Aoraki/Mount Cook, and his surrounding peaks have always drawn mountaineers and explorers from all over both New Zealand and the world, for the challenge and beauty of their landscape. Canterbury explorer and geologist Julius von Haast described the scenic splendour he encountered when advancing up the Tasman riverbed:

> It was towards evening when this grand sight first burst upon us. The majestic forms of Mount Cook, Mount Haidinger, of the Moorhouse range, and many other wild craggy peaks covered with snow and ice, rose in indescribable grandeur before us, and whilst the summits were gilded by the last rays of the sun, the broad valley of the Tasman was already enveloped in deep purple shade. It was a moment of extreme delight, never to be forgotten.

Many great New Zealand and world explorers, European aristocracy, and the nineteenth century scientific community have also had peaks named after them as a way to relate their greatness to the greatness of this landscape – including Aoraki/Mount Cook himself, who had the navigator, Captain James Cook’s name placed upon him on the arrival of Europeans to become known as Aoraki/Mount Cook.

1.1.2 Formation

There are different accounts as to how Aoraki and the surrounding landforms within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park came to be. One such account is known as the Ārai Te Uru tradition and speaks of a great waka, the Ārai Te Uru, travelling to Aotearoa/New Zealand. As this waka travelled down the coast of Te Waipounamu/the South Island it began to be troubled by the waves, eventually succumbing to the rough seas near Matakaea (Shag Point) on the North Otago coastline where it capsized. Many of the passengers went to shore to explore the island. One of the passengers, Kirikirikata, walked inland to explore with his grandson, Aoraki, sitting upon his shoulders. An instruction was given that all of the passengers must return to where the waka lay by sunrise, lest they be turned to stone. However, many of the passengers, including Kirikirikata and Aoraki, did not return to the waka in time; instead turning into many of the mountains and geographical features of central Te Waipounamu.
These ancestors are now mountains made from metamorphic greywacke and schist, transformed from the original sedimentary sandstone first deposited on the sea floor 200 million years ago - tipuna such as Kirikirikatata (Mount Cook Range), Aoraki (sitting atop the range on his grandfather's shoulders), Aroarokaehe (the former Moorhouse Range), and Mauka Atua (Ben Ohau) are now found here. Intense heat and pressure transformed the marine sediment into greywacke, and at greater depths into schist, uplifted and altered them 120 million years ago into their current form and location along the Southern Alps. The Southern Alps Range itself was formed through the alpine fault splitting and moving Papatūānuku (the earth) across two tectonic plates, the Pacific and the Indo-Australian Plates. These plates constantly rotated and moved, colliding together and causing the earth to fold and fault upwards above the sea about seven million years ago. These processes are still continuing and the mountains still rising. Earthquakes generated along this contact front are a recurring natural hazard of the Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps.

They are similar to a second Kāi Tahu creation story that sees Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps (and Te Waipounamu as a whole) as a waka and its passengers crashed upon the earth. Evidence of the ongoing uplift can be seen within the Park, including the vertical beds of argillite and greywacke on Nun’s Veil at the head of Gorilla Stream on the Liebig Range, and the beds of silt and sandstone layers on the northwest side of the Aiguilles Rouges on the Malte Brun Range. Once formed, Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps were then seen by the great explorer Māui who mistook their snowy peaks for a mirage on the ocean – Kā Tiritiri o Te Moana. It is by this name that the Southern Alps became known to Kāi Tahu, and are still called today.

1.1.3 The Alpine Fault and climate change

Aoraki and his fellow passengers from Ārai Te Uru continue to shift and change upon the landscape. Tectonic processes raise the landforms by approximately 5–10 mm per year, while water, wind and ice erode the area at a similar rate. The tectonic plates that originally pushed up Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps continue to move, and sudden movement of the plates as a result of built-up pressure – or to some, the moving of the earthquake deity Rūaumoko – cause earthquakes.

The Alpine Fault, which runs for about 600 km along Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps, is a nationally significant geological feature. This fault has ruptured four times in the last 900 years, each time producing earthquakes of about magnitude 8 on the Richter scale. The Alpine Fault has a high probability (up to 30%) of rupturing in the next 50 years, with a reasonably high probability of occurring during the life of this Plan.

Climate change too, is changing Aoraki and his resting place within the wider environment with changes in temperature and rainfall patterns already becoming apparent. Latest climate projections indicate that New Zealand will be experiencing higher temperatures, rising sea levels, more frequent extreme weather events and changing rainfall patterns by the end of this century. Increasing temperature is likely to result in more rainfall and fewer snowfall events over time.

Sustained periods of glacial recession over recent decades have resulted in up to 24% decrease in glacial ice mass and the formation of terminal proglacial lakes from ice melt. Glacier modelling suggests a further 30% loss of ice mass from Aoraki by 2050.

Rain and snow falling in the mountains are an essential part of the erosion process. Moisture in rocks is subject to alternate freeze and thaw, which eventually leads to fragments breaking away. Snowfall replenishes the snow and ice fields feeding the glaciers, which have carved out the valleys of the Park. Recent years have seen increased rainfall
and fewer snowfall events which impacts on snow fields and erosion risk. Avalanches are a major hazard within the Park, especially in winter and early spring.

Future planning for species management and for the development of new facilities and activities alongside Aoraki and his whānau will have to take place in the context of this long-term view of change, and with the expectation that changes may occur even more rapidly than anticipated.

1.1.4 Natural features

Aoraki and his whānau live in a spectacular and unique environment. The area within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is a narrow rectangular shape extending 65 km along Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps, and out 15 km into Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin. Over a third of the Park consists of permanent snow and ice fields – including major glaciers – while most of the remainder is steep, actively eroding mountain lands, with some limited flat areas within the valleys. Soils are immature, skeletal and low in nutrients, because their continual slow rejuvenation is counteracted by severe natural erosion. Aoraki/Mount Cook stands in its centre as both the ancestral mountain of Kāi Tahu, and New Zealand’s tallest mountain at 3,724 m.

Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps also form a barrier between Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park on the east and Westland Tai Poutini National Park on the west. Many of Aoraki’s relations from the Ārai Te Uru can also be found within the Park, and are now seen as the Liebig and Sibbald ranges, Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range, and a host of other landforms that make up the majority of New Zealand’s highest peaks. These peaks and ranges are also interspersed with glaciers that flow off the surrounding mountains, including New Zealand’s longest glacier that sits alongside Aoraki, the 27 km long Haupapa/Tasman Glacier, as well as the Hooker, Murchison and Godley. These glaciers are bordered by unstable moraine walls at their lower ends, and pro-glacial lakes at their terminus that form as the snow and ice upon Aoraki and the surrounding mountains eventually melts.

As this water flows through the Park, it moves through many different freshwater ecosystems such as nival (snowfields and glaciers), riverine (rivers, streams and creeks), lacustrine (lakes and tarns), and palustrine (marshes, swamps, fens and bogs). This water then flows out of the Park via unique braided river systems, into Lake Pūkaki and into the Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin where the waters from Aoraki and his whānau nourish the lands that were once known as the foodbowl of Kāi Tahu whānui, before continuing down the Waitaki River and meeting the ocean at Te Tai o Ārai Te Uru. Through this concept of ki uta ki tai, and the relationship between Aoraki and his whānau members who sit outside of the Park, Aoraki is connected and a part of the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin area. He both influences and is influenced by the wider area and its inhabitants.

Aoraki and his relations live in a place of extremes within the Park, particularly from west to the east. Rainfall varies widely from 8 000 mm/yr at the Main Divide, falling to 3 000 mm/yr on the Liebig Range, while the temperature fluctuates at least 45°C and humidity experiences extremes from one side to the other. Windspeeds up to 180 km/h have been recorded at Mueller Hut. The Park showcases a distinctive range of endemic plants and animals associated with this climatic range across the Park.
These extreme climate and weather patterns, combined with the active geology of the area, mean that Aoraki and his whānau within the Park are not cloaked in vegetation in the same way that the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin once was. While the waters from Aoraki and other peaks within the Park nourish the areas surrounding them, the continual erosion that occurs in this area, coupled with disruption from flooding, avalanches, and fires, limits vegetation regeneration to those species that can continue to thrive in such a disturbed regime.

1.1.5 Recognition and protection

Aoraki is the ancestral mauka to Kāi Tahu whānui, and as such Aoraki has a tōpuni placed over him through the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. In the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Crown acknowledges the values held by Kāi Tahu whānui with regard to Aoraki. The Ngāi Tahu Claim Settlement Act 1998 requires the New Zealand Conservation Authority and conservation boards to have particular regard to Kāi Tahu values of the tōpuni when approving or considering any general policy, conservation management strategy, conservation management plan or national park management plan. The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 also requires that the New Zealand Conservation Authority and relevant conservation boards must consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, and have particular regard to its views as to the effect on Kāi Tahu values of any policy, strategy or plan referred to above.

The special nature of Aoraki and his surrounds is also recognised by the rest of New Zealand. So remarkable is this area that Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park was formed in 1953 after the passing of the National Parks Act in 1952 to preserve this place for all New Zealanders. This expanded on government control of the area beginning in 1885.

Aoraki and other areas both inside and outside the Park were then further recognised – this time at an international level – in 1986 as part of the UNESCO Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area (WHA) (see Map 2). This recognises Aoraki, his relations, and their home as an outstanding example of the major stages of the earth’s evolutionary history, significant ongoing geological processes, biological evolution, and humanity’s interaction with our natural environment; a place containing superlative natural phenomena, formations or features, such as outstanding examples of important ecosystems or areas of exceptional beauty; and important and significant natural habitats where threatened species or plants of outstanding universal value still survive. A number of geopreservation sites can be found around Aoraki, identified as sites of international, national or regional/local importance by the Geological Society of New Zealand. A list of these sites and their values can be found in Appendix 5 of this Plan.

Adding cultural criteria to the WHA inscription would acknowledge and recognise the relationship that Kāi Tahu whānui have with Aoraki and his relations within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park on an international stage, and further raise the profile of the WHA.

Regionally, Aoraki and his whānau have a dominant presence within the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin. Vast glacial and braided rivers flowing from the upper névés characterise the wide, open valley floors of the Basin. Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin as a whole has been recognised internationally for the exceptional clarity of its night skies, being declared in 2012 as the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve. It is the only one of its kind in the Southern Hemisphere, and one of only twelve in the world (see Map 2).
Map 2 World Heritage Area and Dark Sky Reserve

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park boundary
New Zealand World Heritage Area
Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve
National park
Other public conservation land
Marine reserve

0 10 20 40 km

Part One

Draft Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan 2018
1.2  Aoraki Huanui Rau

Great leaders provide opportunities and support for those who walk with them. “Aoraki Huanui Rau” refers to the many paths – or opportunities – that Aoraki and his whānau provide to people who visit the Park. Traditionally, the melt waters from Aoraki and his whānau would flow into Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin and sustain populations of waterfowl and tuna for Kāi Tahu whānui to harvest during the summer months, providing sustenance to the iwi. In more modern times, Aoraki and his whānau provide a multitude of recreation and commercial opportunities for those who visit, including those who climb up or ski down their slopes, walk the tracks in their foothills, or take photos of the glaciers, skies, peaks, and lakes within the Park.

This section of the Plan acknowledges the wide variety of opportunities that Aoraki and his whānau provide people, and sets out objectives and policies to provide for integrated management across the Park, to ensure that these opportunities are available into the future. Each section links to the Department’s intermediate outcomes to guide how people can enjoy these opportunities, while preserving and improving them for future generations.
1.2.1 Natural heritage

Aoraki and his wider landscape provide a home for many different flora and fauna. Standing on the eastern side of the Divide, their surrounding area showcases a distinctive range of endemic plants and animals associated with drier alpine and montane environments. The Park displays habitat zones ranging from valley floor to mountain summit including montane, sub-alpine, alpine, sub-nival and nival (or permanent ice and snow) environments. The present indigenous ecology of the Park is typical of a young, colonising biota, dating from the end of the last major ice age (12,000 years ago) when every valley was filled with ice and huge piedmont glaciers flowed into what is now Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin.

Glacial moraine ecosystems, classified as naturally rare ecosystems, are a special feature. The sequence of moraines is particularly significant, ranging from very recent rock and gravel colonised by spectacular cushion and herbfields through to stable older moraines supporting primary (pre-human) mixed forest and scrub. Waters flowing from Aoraki and his whānau feed a diversity of naturally rare wetland ecosystems including critically endangered ephemeral wetlands (kettleholes), outwash gravels, and endangered braided rivers.

In relation to the sheer scale of the mountain ranges present in the Park, these sequences of ecosystems are some of the best examples found in New Zealand.

This range and quality of habitats allows many different flora and fauna to find a home alongside Aoraki and his whānau within the Park. A wide variety of these species is treasured for their mahika kai purposes by Kāi Tahu whānui – not just as food, but for arts and crafts, making different tools and belongings, rongoā (medicine) and other cultural purposes. Some of these species are also highly prized and valued not for what Kāi Tahu can use them for, but for what they represent within a Kāi Tahu world view.

Outside the Park, these ecosystem sequences continue to the moraine and outwash landforms (and ecologies) of Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin, and support nationally significant indigenous biodiversity distinctive to the braided riverbeds. Associated with these environmental gradients are the corresponding changes in plant communities, most obviously grading from silver beech and mountain tōtara forests in the Park into mountain beech forests with good populations of red mistletoes adjoining the Park.

The Department prioritises ecosystem management by identifying a number of ecosystem management units (EMUs) that collectively represent the full range of terrestrial and freshwater diversity in New Zealand. Four EMUs are located wholly or partly within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park – Aoraki, Hooker, Tasman River and Godley River. Of these, the Godley and Tasman rivers have been ranked as priority ecosystem units (PEUs) to recognise their especially high ecological value, and the presence of rare or threatened species and ecosystems. Only the upper sections of the Godley and Tasman PEUs lie within the Park, the larger, lower portions lying outside the Park boundary where they have limited protective status. Appendix 4 describes the values for each EMU within the Park and a further four EMUs lying immediately adjacent to the Park.

Aoraki and his whānau have created a unique opportunity for visitors to experience a range of sub-alpine and alpine flora and fauna within relatively easy access from the Aoraki/Mount Cook village. This encourages people to appreciate the precious biodiversity of Aoraki and his home, and to support efforts to improve their long-term protection.

---

Map 3 Ecosystem priorities

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park boundary
Priority ecosystem units
Other ecosystem units
Public conservation land

Aoraki
Copland
Hooker
Tasman River
Godley River
Whataroa
Flora

More than 300 species of plants live alongside Aoraki and his whānau within the Park. Among the most spectacular of these is the Mount Cook buttercup *Ranunculus lyallii*, the largest buttercup in the world. The Park forms a key stronghold for this species. Taoka species such as tikumu (mountain daisy) and taramea (speargrass) are specific resources that Aoraki and his whānau look after and provide to Kāi Tahu whānui, who treasure them. Tikumu (*Celmisia spectabilis* and *C. semicordata*) has many special uses that are particularly important in the south such as making rain capes, waterproofing garments, insulation and protection. Due to its remote location within the mountains, its use is often reserved for special occasions and special people such as rakatira. Taramea (*Aciphylla aurea*) is a plant valued for its aroma, and Kāi Tahu has a well-recorded tradition of making perfume or fragrance by extracting natural oils from this alpine herb.

Numerous at-risk and threatened plants² have also found refuge alongside Aoraki and his whānau within the Park, such as the willowerb (Epilobium pictum); tree daisy (*Olearia fimbriata*), the grass *Deschampsia cespitosa*, dwarf broom (*Carmichaelia uniflora*), cushion forget-me-not (*Myosotis uniflora*) and the high alpine buttercups *Ranunculus godleyanus* and *Ranunculus grahamii* (Graham’s buttercup). Threatened plant species of the braided riverbeds found within and adjacent to the Park include a range of low-lying plants such as pygmy club rush (*Isolepis basilaris*), the succulents *Crassula* sp. and the native scrambling broom *Carmichaelia kirkii*.

Fauna

More than 40 species of bird can be seen weaving between Aoraki and his relations from high alpine outcrops to the lower montane valleys. These include a number of species classified nationally as threatened or at risk, such as the kea, kārearea/falcon, and the only true resident alpine bird – the tiny pīwauwau/rock wren, which survives the winter in high rock basins. Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is important as the mixing zone for the northern and southern “clades” (decendent populations) of pīwauwau/rock wren in the South Island.

Some species of bird are seen as kaitiaki (guardians) by Kāi Tahu whānui, and others are seen as messengers, or even representations of tīpuna (ancestors). Many birds are seen as mahika kai species, with their feathers used in weaving and other craft, bones used to make fish hooks, and some caught for food.

The braided Tasman River bed adjoining the Park is home to the nationally critical kakī/black stilt, one of New Zealand’s rarest birds. Other threatened riverbed species include tarāpunga/black-billed gull; tara piroe/black-fronted tern, tūturiwhatu/banded dotterel and ngutu pare/wrybill, together with the native bully *Galaxias prognathus*.

A population of kawariki/jewelled gecko is found in shrublands around Aoraki/Mount Cook village, southern grass skinks are found in a range of open habitats and both Southern Alps gecko and McCann’s skinks are found in scree, rock outcrops and dry riverbeds. Aoraki and his whānau within the wider landscape support a rich invertebrate fauna of dragonflies, moths, butterflies and several wētā species including nationally uncommon species such as the small alpine wētā or “Mount Cook flea”, which has been recorded on rock outcrops as high as 2500 m, and the giant scree wētā found at Mueller Hut, Barron Saddle and the Malte Brun Range. Walkers, trampers and mountaineers will all be familiar with the profusion of grasshoppers during summer months while walking through swards of golden snowgrass.

---

². New Zealand Threat Classification System: Threatened species – nationally critical, nationally endangered and nationally vulnerable; At-Risk species – declining, recovering, relict and naturally uncommon.
in the valleys. Two easily recognised grasshopper species are *Sigaus australis* and the grey *Brachaspis nivalis*, which can live as high as 1800 m.

Enhancing the protection of these threatened species will be a priority for the Department to improve the long-term health of all threatened species.

**Freshwater ecosystems**

Two of the four major tributaries in the upper Waitaki River catchment, one of the most extensive river basins in New Zealand, originate from the melt waters of Aoraki and his whānau. Snow and ice feeding these tributaries are dominant features of the Park. A wide variety of freshwater and wetland ecosystems are fed from these waters, such as nival (snowfields and glaciers), riverine (rivers, streams and creeks), lacustrine (lakes and tarns), and palustrine (marshes, swamps, fens and bogs). Each of these is associated with different types of habitats supporting a rich biodiversity. Wetland ecosystems generally, and specifically those originating from Aoraki, are of immense spiritual and cultural significance to Kāi Tahu whānui.

A total of six species of indigenous fish, all members of the *Galaxias*/native bully family, have been found in the Park – a low species diversity typical of glacial rivers and upland waters. Most of the species present are classified as threatened, including the upland longjaw galaxias/*Galaxias prognathus*, koaro/*Galaxias brevipennis*, Canterbury galaxias/*Galaxias vulgaris*, and alpine galaxias/*Galaxias vulgaris*. Of the introduced fish, only brown trout are found within the Park, and not in large numbers. A couple of data-deficient freshwater invertebrate species have been recorded in the Hooker River valley.

Riverine ecosystems and many riverine organisms are intimately linked with the natural flow regimes, particularly floods. These may be impacted by climate change as rising temperatures increase the melting of ice and changes to flood regimes.

**Pest plants and animals**

Some introduced species may take advantage of their home among these mauka rakatira3 and threaten indigenous species within the Park. Introduced plants may threaten indigenous species through competition for light and nutrients and, if invasive, may affect characteristics of entire ecosystems. The General Policy for National Parks identifies the priorities for Park biosecurity and pest management as preventing establishment of introduced plants and animals; eradicating new incursions; eradicating, where possible, and containing and reducing the range of established introduced species to maintain the general welfare of indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems.

Climate change is likely to create new opportunities for invasion and occupation by introduced species. New or increased numbers of pest plants and animals and increasing distributional ranges for pest species will create additional pressures on indigenous ecosystems and threatened species. Maintaining indigenous species resilience will be critical for long-term management.

Over 90 species of pest plant have been recorded in the Park, including climbers and scrambling ground covers, grasses, rushes, sedges, herbaceous species and a variety of introduced trees and shrubs. Of particular note is crack willow – planted in the past for river control in the Tasman Valley and subsequently spreading downstream. Douglas fir, pine and larch, initially planted around the original Mount Cook homestead site at White Horse Hill, have some heritage value, but also pose the risk of wilding spread. Gorse and broom, Russell lupin, tree lupin and wild cherry are some of the major introduced pest

---

3. People of high rank who are now frozen in the form of mountains
species occurring within the Park. Introduced grasses are present throughout the Park, but particularly within the braided riverbeds and the village, including cultivated lawns and components of open grasslands.

Twenty-five species of pest animals have been identified within the Park. Chamois exist at low densities within the Aorarokaehe, Pae Tata and Pae Tawhiti Places while Himalayan tahr are found in all altitudinal zones within the Park, except for areas of permanent ice/snow. They have extensive browsing impacts on sensitive alpine flora. Ship rats, rabbits and hedgehogs are widespread at lower altitudes but are maintained at low/moderate numbers through regular pest control operations, with some seasonal variations. Possums and hares, mice and stoats are widespread throughout the Park at all altitudes and cause significant impacts by browsing and predation on indigenous ecosystems and species. Tracks and access routes provide corridors for the movement of these animals and allow for their dispersal into and around the Park. Cats (feral and domestic), ferrets and weasels have been recorded in the Park but are not common or widespread. The German wasp is a threat and subject to seasonally variable irruptions in density. Magpies, spur-winged plover and swamp harrier are all present in the Park and are considered a significant threat to indigenous fauna by their aggressive and predatory nature, particularly ground-nesting birds, reptiles and invertebrates. The indigenous karoro/black-backed gull, considered as a taoka species by Kāi Tahu whānui, can also create some issues in the Park related to scavenging and aggressive behaviour towards other species.

A number of other pest animals are currently found around Aoraki’s relations outside the Park, and pose a potential threat to native species if they are introduced or allowed to spread and establish within the Park. These include Bennett’s wallaby (or red-necked wallaby), fallow deer and feral pigs. The population of Bennett’s wallaby is centred on Hunter Hills near Waimate and populations have established in Ben Ohau Range. Local populations of fallow deer and pigs exist within close proximity to the Park and have been identified as real potential for migration into the Park and threats to native flora and fauna. Sheep and cattle graze the river flats along the Tasman River, occasionally straying into the lower reaches of the National Park where they may threaten the feeding and nesting habitat of threatened riverbed birds.

Pest management response ranges from monitoring for presence or impacts on Park ecosystems to active control of species. For example the Himalayan Thar Control Plan has set a target of zero density of tahr within the Park, with intervention required to maintain density at less than 1 tahr/sqkm.

In the past, the focus for pest control programmes has been along the Park boundary and rivers to control new invasions of pest species into the Park. More recently this focus has moved to a landscape-scale approach to enable more effective management over larger areas. Collaborative efforts between Kāi Tahu, public and government groups including philanthropic interests are contributing to significant advances in both the technology and the implementation of predator control operations.

The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki (see Appendix 1) requires the Director-General to provide relevant information and consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to any programme to identify and protect indigenous plants or wildlife, any programme to eradicate pests and any survey to identify the number and type of concessions which may be appropriate within the Aoraki tōpuni area.
Ecosystem services

Aoraki and his surrounding environment provide a range of resources that support people to live on the land. These are often referred to as ecosystem services, which simply put are the benefits people obtain from nature. Ecosystem services can be categorised as ‘provisioning’, such as food, timber and freshwater; ‘regulating’, such as air quality, climate and pest regulation; ‘cultural’ such as recreation and sense of belonging; and ‘supporting’, such as soil quality and natural habitat resistance to weeds.

Significant ecosystem services provided by Aoraki and his whānau for those who live within his catchment include the pristine water quality of the waters flowing from them which gives life to a wide range of species and habitats; the vast complexity of landscapes, environments and ecological niches supporting a rich biological diversity; and the alpine environment of mountains, glaciers and rivers providing for a diversity of cultural, tourism and recreation opportunities. Together this environment also contributes to lower catchment services including supporting mahika kai activities, the management of water resources and downstream flooding, tourism and recreation opportunities in the wider surrounding area, and the potential for hydro-electricity generation. The wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin is also seen as cultural landscape and home to Kāi Tahu ancestors, which provides whānau with a spiritual connection to their histories, and a sense of collective belonging which sustains cultural wellbeing. Aoraki and his whānau are the source of much of the water flowing through the turbines of the Upper Waitaki and Waitaki River power stations and, as the head of the Waitaki catchment, have an important water and soil conservation role.

The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

Objectives

1. The diversity and integrity of natural values in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is preserved as far as possible, including:
   a) preserving and protecting the full range of indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems in a healthy functioning state;
   b) protecting and enhancing populations of threatened and at-risk species within the Park to contribute to their overall persistence4;
   c) eradicating, as far as possible, all introduced pest plants and animals, and wild animals;
   d) preserving and protecting significant geological features, landforms and landscapes, including temporal and seasonal landscapes, and cultural landscapes, which contribute to the exceptional, cultural significance, beauty and scientific importance of the Park; and
   e) supporting others to contribute to the conservation of these values.

2. The integrity of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area and the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve status over Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is recognised, celebrated and preserved.

4. Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer). Persistence is measured at a national level.
### Policies

1. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board to achieve the objectives set out in this Plan, and the natural heritage intermediate outcomes and relevant stretch goals as detailed in the Statement of Intent.

2. Work in consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka to restore, preserve and monitor the integrity of threatened and at-risk species, taoka species and their habitats within the Park, with an emphasis on:
   a) priority species and ecosystem units within the Park; and
   b) species, ecosystems and natural features significant to Kāi Tahu.

3. Partner with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to:
   a) meet statutory obligations for community consultation when undertaking pest animal and plant control operations in the Park; and
   b) integrate mātauraka Kāi Tahu into decision-making for natural heritage management.

4. Work together with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the Central South Island Fish & Game Council, Environment Canterbury and others, and advocate for, the:
   a) preservation of indigenous freshwater fisheries and fish habitats in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including by implementing the New Zealand Fish Passage Guidelines 2018;^5^
   b) maintenance and restoration of indigenous fish passage into and out of the Park;
   c) protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park at risk of loss or decline; and
   d) identification of any waters in the Park where the eradication and control of introduced species, including sports fish, will be a priority.

5. Eradicate where possible, otherwise contain and reduce the range of introduced plants and animals in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and prevent any new incursions into the Park.

6. Remove all livestock grazing from Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

7. Work co-operatively with kaitiaki rūnaka and the community, including conservation and recreation organisations, philanthropic interests, adjacent landowners and concessionaires, to:
   a) maintain or restore indigenous species, habitats and natural features in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park collectively valued by the community; and
   b) encourage initiatives for, and participation in, landscape-scale pest control programmes where this supports the Department's control of pest plants and animals within and adjacent to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

8. Undertake monitoring programmes to determine the effectiveness of pest control on the protection and restoration of indigenous ecosystems and to identify any detrimental effects on the natural or cultural values in the Park.

9. Implement management programmes to reduce tahr populations in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in accordance with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan 1993.

---

^5^ Guidelines developed by the National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd and the Department of Conservation, with the New Zealand Fish Passage Advisory Group.
Policies continued

10. Encourage commercial and recreational hunting groups to contribute to effective control of wild animals within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park by:
   a) providing support for recreational hunting access where this will contribute directly to the Department’s control operations;
   b) shooting all wild animals seen while hunting inside the Park; and
   c) reporting on sightings and numbers killed, and on sites of significant vegetation damage.

11. Identify potential risks for long-term protection of significant natural and cultural landscapes and features in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, and the preservation of the Park’s natural character, including natural quiet, natural light cycles and the night sky quality.

12. Educate and increase awareness of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area and the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve status over Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, and potential threats to the long-term protection of this international status, to ensure that:
   a) any new developments or upgrades to existing facilities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park do not adversely affect the quality of the night skies or the World Heritage status; and
   b) the World Heritage Centre and the International Dark-Sky Association are contacted regarding any application for new activities or developments within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park potentially affecting the status of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area or the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve, before deciding on the application.

13. Advocate for responsible land use, riverbed and freshwater activities outside Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to protect, and avoid adverse effects on, national park values, including:
   a) maintaining public access and safety;
   b) preserving significant natural, historic and cultural values;
   c) protecting recreational fisheries and freshwater fish habitats and important braided riverbed habitats; and
   d) protecting significant natural areas.

14. Work with agencies, local authorities and community groups to raise public awareness of threats to the natural values of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including:
   a) the threat of fire damage to species and ecosystems within the Park; and
   b) the risk of pest plant and animal introductions into the Park and their impact on species persistence and landscape values.
Milestones

Ecological integrity
1. Developed and implemented a programme that sets priorities to manage, monitor and report on terrestrial and freshwater indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to achieve the biodiversity objectives and outcomes (Year 2).
2. Developed a plan for monitoring and reporting on the status of taoka and priority threatened and at-risk species in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 3).
3. Reported on progress in achieving biodiversity objectives and outcomes for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including for priority threatened and at-risk species such as kea, piwauwau/rock wren, freshwater galaxias species and kawariki/jewelled gecko (Years 5, 10).

Pest management
4. Established and implemented a programme which sets priorities to manage and monitor pest plants and animals within the Park (Year 3).
5. Delivered monitoring and control requirements of tahr within the park in accordance with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan and the Department’s Tahr monitoring programme (Years 2, 5 and 9).
6. Reported on the effectiveness of landscape-scale pest control programmes, either wholly or partly within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, to eradicate or reduce populations of pest plants and animals within the Park (yearly).
7. Reported on the effectiveness of pest control programmes, other than landscape-scale programmes, to eradicate or reduce populations of introduced pest plants and animals within the Park (Years 5, 10).
8. Reported on the effectiveness of pest control programmes to enhance indigenous ecosystem integrity (Years 5, 10).
9. Provided annual operational plans for tahr control (yearly).

Natural features and landscapes
10. Developed and implemented a Lightscape Management Plan to protect the quality of the night skies (Years 2, 5).
11. Maintained the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area and the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve status (Year 10).
1.2.2 Historic and cultural heritage

Aoraki and his surrounding landforms are themselves examples of historic heritage – ancestors frozen in time, providing a link for Kāi Tahu whānui to their past, their cultural histories, and a link to the cosmological worlds. Adding cultural criteria to the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area (WHA) inscription would acknowledge and recognise the relationship that Kāi Tahu whānui have with Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park on an international stage, and further raise the profile of the WHA.

People have engaged with Aoraki and the many opportunities he and his whānau provide since the first people landed in Te Waipounamu. For this reason, there are a variety of human-made historic heritage features scattered throughout the landscape too. Kāi Tahu were most active in the foothills of the Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps, Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin and along the Waitaki River. Whānau would camp at nohoaka (seasonal settlements) to engage in mahika kai activities such as catching weka and tuna to feed their families and trade with others. This practice of camping at nohoaka is kept alive today through various managed nohoaka throughout the Kāi Tahu takiwā, including one on the shores of Lake Pūkaki.

The area closer to Aoraki provided Kāi Tahu on the east coast of Te Waipounamu with a way to reach their relations on the West Coast via ara tawhito (traditional trails) that crossed the Main Divide. It also provided resources such as tikimu and taramea which were – and still are – used for weaving, clothing and adornment. This engagement with Aoraki and the wider area has resulted in ancient artefacts being found within the Park, including recorded finds of Māori artefacts within the Godley valley, and middens in other areas.

Upon the arrival of Europeans, Aoraki very quickly became popular as a mountaineering destination, sharing his beauty and challenges with the new inhabitants of New Zealand. Early Europeans were supported by Kāi Tahu guides who had traversed the trails and passes for generations, and were well known as the alpine guides of choice around Aoraki. Concerns about damage to the area from burning and grazing activities prompted the establishment of the Hooker and Mueller valleys as a recreational reserve in 1885. The Tasman valley was similarly protected in 1887, followed by the Murchison valley in 1917 and the upper Godley glaciers in 1927. Following the passing of the National Parks Act in 1952, these four areas were united as the Mount Cook National Park. The Deed of Settlement signed between Kāi Tahu and the Crown in 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 brought about an amendment to recognise and rename the Park as Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Due to the Park’s new-found fame as the premier climbing destination in New Zealand, many more permanent structures were erected around Aoraki from the 1950s onwards, including homesteads, hotels, and climbing huts. Few of these have survived the intervening years or effects of fire, wind, flood and ground instability. Only a plaque, a number of larch, fir and pine trees, foundations and a fireplace now mark the original accommodation site at White Horse Hill, the first Hermitage. All that remains of the original Ball Hut, the starting point for many early climbing explorations, are the shattered foundations. Early farming homestead sites remain on the Birch Hill Flats at the entrance to the Park. Sefton Bivouac is maintained as an historic hut, while the historic Hooker Hut was removed from its destabilised site below Copland Pass, and the original Empress Hut is on display at the visitor centre. Some of the early buildings near The Hermitage are owned and maintained by the hotel owners.

New Zealand’s taonga or national treasures include historic buildings or structures, archaeological sites, traditional or sacred places and historic or cultural landscapes. Preservation, protection and interpretation of historic treasures maintains an important link with the past, which in turn contributes to community identity and wellbeing. The Kāi Tahu relationship with cultural landscapes and sites of Kāi Tahu cultural significance are as much about the contemporary relationship as they are about the historic. These places are living and ever evolving – as too are Kāi Tahu and their relationship with them.

The information resources associated with historic places can enhance understanding and enjoyment of these sites. Information sources such as oral histories, written records and photographs or drawings are essential for preserving stories of time and place.

The Department protects 12,000 archaeological sites and historical places nationally that tell the story of our past. The Department in association with the Ministry for Culture and Heritage is working on Icon Heritage Sites – the story of who we are. These sites tell a range of great stories about Kiwi identity. The project is also known as Landmarks Whenua Tohunga. Recorded archaeological sites are on the NZ Archaeological Association archaeological site recording scheme website: http://www.archsite.org.nz/

On a national level the Department is guided in its management of historic places by the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the conservation of places of historic heritage value (1993). ICOMOS is UNESCO’s principal advisor in matters concerning the conservation and protection of historic monuments and sites.

The many archaeological sites and historic places located on public conservation lands and waters create challenges for the Department in managing all recorded sites. The Department assessed these sites and established a list of priority places for active conservation called “actively-conserved historic places”. There are seven actively-conserved historic places within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. These are listed in Table 1 and the locations are shown on the individual Place maps, maps 9, 14, 16, 18 and 20.

Table 1: Actively-conserved historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Heritage topics and significance</th>
<th>Pressure/threats</th>
<th>Destination Management category/access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alpine Memorial</td>
<td>Hooker Valley</td>
<td>Recreation, memorial to climbers; significant recreation/tourism site</td>
<td>Visitor impact (vandalism)</td>
<td>Part of Icon; accessible by foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old Empress Hut</td>
<td>Aoraki/ Mount Cook Visitor Centre</td>
<td>Recreation/ mountaineering; significant mountain hut, and first to be flown to a site in the Park</td>
<td>Visitor impact (vandalism)</td>
<td>Part of Gateway; accessible by foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Ball Hut Site</td>
<td>Tasman Valley</td>
<td>Recreation/ mountaineering/ tourism; significant archaeological site</td>
<td>Visitor impact; erosion</td>
<td>Backcountry; accessible by foot from the Tasman Valley Road end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Hermitage site with stables and historic trees</td>
<td>White Horse Hill</td>
<td>Tourism/recreation; significant archaeological recreation/tourism site</td>
<td>Subject to safety issues due to location within camping area Trees removed due to visitor safety risk</td>
<td>Icon; accessible by foot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1.1: Additional recorded archaeological sites in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference number</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Heritage topics and significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H36/2</td>
<td>Rubbish dump</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36/12</td>
<td>Telegraph line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36/10</td>
<td>Track</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36/9</td>
<td>Hermitage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36/1</td>
<td>Midden/Oven</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H36/8</td>
<td>Hermitage</td>
<td>Hermitage stables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conservation area H37 018 Cluster of sites associated with Birch Hill homestead (previously removed from Park for accommodation purposes)</td>
<td>Birch Hill river flats</td>
<td>Enclosures, fences, yards Historic homestead trees Jimmy Lloyd’s gravesite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to these in situ historic sites, there are historic relics and information held by the Department, some of which are displayed in the Visitor Centre in the Park.

Authority to modify an archaeological site is currently required from the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga. It is a statutory requirement under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, section 42, to have an authority from the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga for any works or actions that will modify or destroy an archaeological site.
Our history is brought to life and protected

Objective

1. The history of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is brought to life, protected and preserved for future generations, with a focus on:
   a) recognising and enhancing the relationship between Kāi Tahu whānui and the land, waters and resources in the Park;
   b) engaging more New Zealanders in their heritage; and
   c) increasing the benefits of historic and cultural values to New Zealanders.

Policies

1. Manage Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to achieve the objectives set out in this Plan, consistent with the Department’s intermediate outcomes and relevant stretch goals as detailed in the Statement of Intent.
2. Partner with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to consider mutually agreed identification, preservation and management of heritage in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park significant to them.
3. Work with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to identify the location, value, significance and condition of historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and ensure records of these places are up to date.
4. Profile any historic icon sites and selected actively-conserved places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park through quality interpretation, both on- and off-site, to enable visitors to identify with the places and their stories.
5. Prioritise the actively-conserved historic places and Icon sites in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park for protection and preservation based on their:
   a) historic, cultural and physical significance;
   b) value to Kāi Tahu and/or the community; and
   c) conservation requirements.
6. Undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at actively-conserved historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park having regard to any heritage assessments and conservation plans, iwi management plans, national and international best practices, and the ICOMOS NZ charter.
7. Engage with kaitiaki rūnaka before undertaking new works (such as constructing new tracks or structures, or new earthworks), or works on or adjacent to waterways or water sources in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, having regard to both tangible and intangible values.
8. Report annually to the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and kaitiaki rūnaka on actions to achieve the historic heritage intermediate outcome and stretch goals as detailed in the Department’s Statement of Intent.
9. Consult with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to ensure relevant tikaka Māori protocols are followed when:
   a) managing kōiwi discoveries; and
   b) retrieving deceased persons (tūpāpaku) from the Park.
10. In partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, establish a cultural interpretation programme to enhance Kāi Tahu presence and visibility in the Park.
11. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and relevant local authorities to prevent the spreading of deceased individuals’ ashes within the land and waters of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
Policies continued

12. Should consider the following criteria when considering applications to erect or retain structures (including monuments, pou whenua, plaques), utilities and facilities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park:

a) the relevant outcomes and policies in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki where the activity is proposed to occur;

b) the structure, utility or facility is readily available for public use where this is culturally appropriate;

c) the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic structure, utility or facility;

d) for plaques and memorials, whether they can be located within the Memorial Room of the Visitor Centre;

e) where it is appropriate to retain a structure, the application is an adaptive reuse of an existing structure, utility or facility;

f) the structure represents or communicates kaitiaki rūnaka history or values;

g) the activity promotes the health and safety of the public and communities; and

h) the adverse effect on tangible or intangible cultural values, wāhi tapu or wāhi taoka are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Tōpuni management

13. Partner with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to identify, protect, conserve and correctly interpret historic and cultural heritage values within the tōpuni landscape.

Milestones

1. Established a cultural interpretation programme in partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, to enhance Kāi Tahu presence and visibility in the Park (Year 3).

2. Completed heritage assessments for all actively-conserved historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and made publicly available on the Department’s website (Year 5).

3. Implemented the cultural interpretation programme (Year 5).

4. Reported on any new actively-conserved historic places identified within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 5, 10).

5. Increased the number of actively-conserved historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, with active interpretation and promotion (Year 10).
1.2.3 Recreational values

Aoraki and his whānau provide a variety of recreational experiences for both domestic and international visitors to the Park. These include opportunities for walking, camping, boating, scenic flights and air access into the higher alpine and glacial environments for more adventurous pursuits such as heli-hiking, heli-skiing and hunting. Walks in the Park range from short local walks, for example within the village and lower Tasman areas, to longer front country accessible day walks in the Tasman and Hooker Valleys, overnight tracks with shelters, huts and toilets, and more challenging multi-day tramping into the backcountry mountains on low-use tracks and marked routes with basic huts. Climbing opportunities include traditional rock climbing, mountaineering and sports climbing. The physical beauty and climbing challenge of the array of high peaks, the sheer size of the glaciers, and the extent of accessible recreational opportunities in a mountainous environment are all unique features of Aoraki and his whānau that they share with people who visit and that people have the responsibility to respect and preserve.

The effects of climate change are becoming increasingly relevant for the Park, in particular the risks and challenges posed for the ongoing demand by visitors for access to the high alpine environment. Planning for facilities and managing the safety of activities, including aircraft landings, will need to be undertaken in the context of a longer-term view as the effects may occur more rapidly than currently anticipated.

The Department uses a recreation zoning approach to manage recreation activities in the Park. The visitor management zone (VMZ) approach describes six settings – urban, rural, front country, backcountry, remote and wilderness. These are matched to visitor user groups to identify the appropriate level and type of activity opportunity for an area, and the type of facilities appropriate. The VMZ areas for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park are shown on Maps 4 and 4.1. Appendix 2 outlines the management prescriptions for each zone.

A number of walks have been developed in the front country of the Park to encourage people to experience the awe and wonder of Aoraki and his whānau in a very accessible way. These include Icon and Gateway recreation destinations, a Great Day Walk (the Hooker Valley Track) and a Great Short Walk (the Blue Lakes and Tasman Glacier View walk). (See Map 4.1.)

Aoraki also provides recreational and tourism opportunities for the wider regional community. To the east, his proximity to the towns of Twizel and Tekapo/Takapō creates opportunities for integration of activities between the Park and the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin and complementary facilities for people to move within this larger area. Along his western side Aoraki links with the Westland Tai Poutini National Park, sharing physical similarities and values, and delivering complementary visitor opportunities between the two national parks, including trans-alpine tramping and scenic flights.

The Park is a popular destination on the tourist route from Christchurch to Milford Sound and provides employment opportunities and benefits that complement those provided for in the national park and that increase the range of visitor attractions available in the region.

More and more people are coming to experience the various opportunities Aoraki and his relations provide. Visits to the Park have shown an increase of nearly 40% from 2015/16 year to 2016/17 year with the strongest increase occurring over the winter and autumn seasons. Annual visitor numbers have exceeded 800,000 in the 2016/17 year and are predicted to double (to over 1.5 million) over the life of this Plan.

Overseas visitors account for 64% of all people visiting Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, compared to 36% of visits by New Zealanders. China was the number one source of visitors to Aoraki over the last two years, with Australia and China making up around one third of all international visitors. Over 50% of all New Zealanders visiting Aoraki were from the
Map 4 Visitor management zones
Map 4.1 Visitor management zones - detail

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

- Icon
- Gateway
- Icon and Gateway track
- Urban
- Front country
- Backcountry
- Remote

0 0.5 1
km

Draft Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan 2018
Part One
Canterbury region: Otago and Auckland were the next most common. Around 25–30% of New Zealanders visiting Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area also visited Aoraki, and this proportion is steadily growing.

Aircraft access into Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has been well established for many years and at times has been much busier than it is today. Both ski-planes and helicopters are used for transporting people into the Park to enable people to experience Aoraki and his environment in a variety of ways. These ways include scenic, snow and glacier landings, heli-skiing and heli-hiking and positioning recreationists, as well as supporting wild animal control and servicing utilities and facilities.

Aircraft are expected to become the main mechanism for recreation access around Aoraki over the life of this Plan as continuing glacial recession reduces the alternative means of access to him and his surroundings. Ensuring the protection of natural and cultural values within the Park, including the protection of natural quiet, will be a key issue for management and monitoring of future recreation opportunities. See 1.3.3 Aircraft for general policy relating to aircraft within the Park.

Soundscape and tranquillity outcomes

Aoraki and his relations have their own voices which can be heard through the rushing of the waters that flow from their snowmelt, the rumbles of avalanches on their slopes, and the singing of birds that live around them.

The diversity of sounds occurring within the Park creates its own soundscape. Soundscape includes all of the sounds present in the landscape, both natural and anthropogenic sounds introduced through human activities. Wind and water, birds and animals all have their unique sounds, as do human visitors, and any vehicles they introduce to the Park. The experience of a person within a landscape will be influenced by their perception of the diversity of sounds and their expectations for the level of tranquillity or natural quiet they would encounter.

Tranquillity is seen as an important aspect of a person’s experience in the Park, so the Department has developed methods to measure and manage tranquillity levels. This has been further discussed for whole-of-Park management in 1.3.3 Aircraft, and in relation to each Place in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki.

One of the Park’s purposes is to enable the public to receive inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits from the mountains, forests, lakes, rivers and other natural features. One of the most valued benefits is the ability to experience tranquil places. Tranquillity is a function of both the visible setting and the audible setting. This is reflected in the need to preserve not only the natural landscapes of the Park, but also its natural soundscapes – also known as ‘natural quiet’ – as far as possible, to let those visiting the Park be inspired by the kōrero of Aoraki and his relations. The introduction of ‘unnatural’ anthropogenic noise (human-caused) sounds from powered aircraft (including overflights and landings), watercraft, vehicles and other human activities, can affect natural quiet and make it difficult to hear these rakatira.
Map 5 Desired tranquility outcomes

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

Tranquility
- Very high
- High
- Medium
- Low
- Very low
One mechanism for monitoring and measuring the integrity of the natural soundscape is by mapping tranquillity levels across the Park. Tranquillity levels are expressed as a Tranquillity Rating (TR) on a scale of 0–10. The presence of both fully natural landscapes and fully natural soundscapes results in the highest level of tranquillity possible (TR 10). The desired tranquillity outcomes for different parts of the Park have been set out in the Place outcomes in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki, using the words identified in Table 2. These describe and represent the anticipated future state of tranquillity in the Park that the Plan sets out to achieve. Map 5 illustrates the desired tranquillity outcomes for the Park.

### Table 2: Tranquillity and outcomes at Place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tranquillity scale</th>
<th>0-2</th>
<th>2-4</th>
<th>4-6</th>
<th>6-8</th>
<th>8-10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Words used in outcomes to describe the desired tranquillity level</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Very high</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most people tend to benefit increasingly from tranquillity above 5 on this scale. TR10 requires a fully natural landscape – i.e., ‘natural quiet’.

Aircraft activity can have adverse effects on Aoraki and the wider Park, including impacts on indigenous wildlife as well as on amenity, natural quiet and remoteness values. Effects most often relate to the presence, behaviour and frequency of aircraft activity, and the levels of associated noise. Use of the Tranquillity Mapping tool will allow the Department to measure noise levels associated with aircraft and other activities and to identify desired tranquillity outcomes.

### Soundscape and tranquillity

To manage and monitor the natural soundscapes of New Zealand’s national parks and other public conservation lands and waters the Department has developed a Tranquillity Mapping Tool (TMT) in collaboration with the University of Canterbury. The TMT enables the Department and stakeholders to work co-operatively in conserving New Zealand’s treasured soundscapes and tranquil places.

Tranquillity maps graphically represent the level of tranquillity present within a given area over a given timeframe. Tranquillity maps can also represent or ‘model’ the degree to which natural soundscapes are being modified by anthropogenic noise within a natural setting like a national park. The TMT has been applied across both Aoraki/Mount Cook and Westland Tai Poutini national parks to represent the movement of aircraft across this combined area.

Within the Parks most anthropogenic noise comes from commercial aircraft operations. Modelling the distribution of aircraft noise over periods of time and space requires an understanding of the movement of the sound source. To do this the Department developed tracking devices, which were temporarily installed in some aircraft on a voluntary basis by commercial aircraft operators to collect their flightpath information, including Park landings and overflights. Data collected from aircraft operators accessing the Parks during the 2016/17 summer tourist season was used to generate maps showing the level of tranquillity available to the public on the ground during that time. The desired tranquillity outcomes shown in Map 5 describe and represent the desired future state of natural soundscapes across both national parks.

---

7. ‘Soundscape Management’ GNSS receivers – the CAA has assessed the DOC Receiver/‘BeechTrack’ datalogger as a Personal Electronic Device for airworthiness purposes.
New Zealanders and our visitors are enriched by outdoor experiences

Objective

1. Visitors to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park are enriched by inspiring and enjoyable outdoor recreation experiences, with an emphasis on:
   a) protecting natural resources and historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values;
   b) providing accessible, quality Icon and Gateway short and day visitor experiences;
   c) encouraging more people to safely enjoy the Local Treasure and Backcountry destinations; and
   d) expressing the significance of this area to Kāi Tahu whānui.

Policies

1. Manage the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to achieve the objectives set out in this Plan, consistent with the Department’s intermediate outcomes and relevant stretch goals as detailed in the Statement of Intent.
2. Identify, provide and manage a range of safe outdoor recreation opportunities, in addition to those provided by concessionaires, in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park where:
   a) they are consistent with the:
      i) protection of indigenous natural, historic, and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values;
      ii) purposes for which the Park is held;
      iii) outcome and policies for the relevant Place;
      iv) visitor management zones as shown in Map 4 and described in Appendix 2; and
      v) conservation of significant scenic, geological, soil and landform features and other abiotic diversity;
   b) visitor investment planning processes that include consideration of demand, cost-benefit analysis, revenue opportunities and carrying capacity; and
   c) the effects and impacts of climate and geological change have been considered.
3. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the community and local businesses to provide a range of high-quality visitor facilities and opportunities that:
   a) contribute to and complement the range of recreational opportunities available in the Park and the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area; and
   b) add value to the visitor experience in the Park, including through opportunities to express the specific importance of the Park to Kāi Tahu whānui.
4. Work closely with kaitiaki rūnaka, commercial recreation providers and recreation groups to explore opportunities for integration of recreation activities across the Westland Tai Poutini and Aoraki/Mount Cook national parks boundary where this will benefit:
   a) the ongoing protection and appreciation of the natural and cultural values of the Parks; and
   b) the quality of the visitor experiences.
Policies continued

5. Seek to avoid or otherwise minimise conflicts between those providing or undertaking similar or different types of recreational activities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

6. Provide the Aoraki/Mount Cook village community and visitors to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park with opportunities for positive social, physical, cultural and learning experiences.

7. Avoid, remedy or minimise adverse effects on the qualities of tranquillity and natural quiet, solitude and remoteness where these are important features and expectations of the visitor experience in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

8. Consult the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on all proposals for accommodation and related facilities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park provided by the Department or others for public or departmental use, including any replacement, additions and extensions, and any proposal where public access will be affected.

9. Promote the principles of ‘Leave No Trace’ and foster a culture of sustainable recreation practices in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

10. Monitor hut usage and make recommendations on the need to implement a booking system, through an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981.

Milestone

1. Integrated historic and cultural interpretation into the visitor experience, including the use of dual Te Reo and English languages for Icon and Gateway recreation destinations (Year 5).
1.2.4 Engagement values

Community engagement

For conservation management to progress in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, the Department, working with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, is focused on building positive and constructive relationships with the community. The focus for these relationships is to provide opportunities for everyone to enjoy, learn and help look after the places, cultural values and indigenous species that they value.

Raising awareness of Aoraki, his whānau, their surrounding environment and its importance in the everyday lives of all New Zealanders is a focus for the Department. This includes encouraging people to take advantage of the recreation opportunities that Aoraki and his surrounding landscape provides within the Park, as well as developing an awareness of the cultural importance of this area to Kāi Tahu whānui, and the intrinsic values of nature conservation.

While the local community surrounding Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is relatively small, volunteer projects can offer a range of different opportunities for locals and visitors to contribute positively to conservation management. Providing opportunities for participants to up-skill and increase their knowledge and capability will allow them to contribute with or without Departmental support.

Young people and youth are the future voice for conservation and must be encouraged to access our wild places so they can grow the passion to appreciate and protect the natural environment. As one of the most significant examples of Aotearoa's wild beauty, Aoraki and his environment provide a key opportunity to grow this appreciation and commitment.

The Department recognises the importance of engaging with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu when developing relationships with others in conservation management, to ensure that Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities are upheld and to integrate mātuaraka Kāi Tahu into management decisions. Supporting Kāi Tahu whānui in their desire to be involved with and active in the Park is also a key focus for the Department.

Understanding the threats and risks to the Park from the potential impacts of increasing tourism will be a focus for raising awareness. This includes risks for people’s wellbeing and safety and the threats to the Park values, such as the impact of uncontrolled dogs on wildlife, bio-security threats and pest animal and plant incursions.

There are many community groups, charitable organisations and individuals interested in the general wellbeing and protection of Aoraki and wider home of his whānau, such as the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society, Federated Mountain Clubs, New Zealand Alpine Club, philanthropic interests and local community groups. The Police and Search and Rescue are the first respondents to emergency situations.

The Department will work with these groups to identify shared values and develop solutions for managing risks and threats within the Park.

Delivering greater conservation gains

The Department seeks to identify and promote new opportunities and partnerships to deliver greater conservation gains while respecting the mana of Aoraki and his wider whānau.

The Department works with a wide range of statutory agencies to achieve mutually agreed objectives and priorities for conservation. Examples include the New Zealand Transport Agency on roading; TBfree New Zealand on possum control; Environment Canterbury on biodiversity and pest management; Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga on historic places; the Central South Island Fish & Game Council on sports fish-related issues; and kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on cultural issues.
Public and private organisations, including philanthropic groups, are becoming increasingly capable of contributing to conservation management and are looking for opportunities to work in partnership with the Department.

With the growth in tourism across the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area, businesses are also seeking to demonstrate how they can contribute to conservation and to sustaining a healthy environment. There is potential for commercial businesses to engage in conservation partnerships. Such partnerships can significantly improve a business’s worth, value and reputation while helping to conserve natural, historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values. This includes the opportunity for “conservation tourism” activities where visitors to the Park can undertake or contribute to ongoing projects such as monitoring, weed control and pest control as part of their visitor experience in the Park.

With more of a focus on landscape-scale conservation management approaches, the Department is increasingly looking to develop partnerships to achieve the conservation outcomes desired.

### New Zealanders connect and contribute to conservation

#### Objective

1. New Zealanders and businesses connect and contribute to the preservation of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park by:
   a) ensuring preservation of the Park is seen as an essential investment in their wellbeing and is core to their identity, values and thinking;
   b) providing opportunities for more people to be engaged in and connected with the Park through volunteer involvement and recreation;
   c) increasing community understanding, technical skill and active management and support for conservation in the Park; and
   d) increasing the amount of conservation achieved in the Park.

#### Policies

1. Manage Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to achieve the objectives set out in this Plan, consistent with the Department’s intermediate outcomes and relevant stretch goals as detailed in the Statement of Intent.
2. Actively support kaitiaki rūnaka and Kāi Tahu whānui engagement with Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park through a range of methods, including access and expression of ahi kā, consistent with the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.
3. Work with community and volunteer groups to increase their understanding, technical skills and active support for conservation in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
4. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the statutory agencies, local and regional businesses and tourism organisations, concessionaires, tertiary and research providers, schools and the community to:
   a) improve opportunities generally for engaging more people with the preservation of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
   b) encourage youth and young people to access the Park to develop an appreciation of the Park’s values and their protection; and
   c) create and develop opportunities to promote conservation initiatives within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
Policies continued

5. Build partnerships that integrate Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park into collaborative multi-agency initiatives across the wider region that aim to:
   a) manage the impacts of tourism pressures on the visitor experience and the values of the Park; and
   b) control landscape-scale risks and threats to the conservation values of the Park.

6. Reduce barriers to participation through effective communication, and acknowledge the contribution of the community, with clearly articulated goals for the preservation of national park values and recreation in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

7. Encourage recreation concession opportunities that provide sustainable or eco-friendly tourism initiatives in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

8. Raise awareness of the importance of intact, healthy, functioning ecosystems in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to the wellbeing of New Zealanders, and the Park’s contribution to the economic prosperity of the region and the country.

9. Seek opportunities to integrate conservation values into messaging from other agencies (such as visitor centres) where it can increase the number of people who engage with conservation in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and value its benefit.

Milestones

1. In partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, identified opportunities for kaitiaki rūnaka to engage in the management of the Park (Year 2).

2. Developed information and resources to raise awareness of conservation opportunities within the Park for the restoration or enhancement of natural, cultural and historic values (Year 3).

3. Identified partnerships with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, community and business groups to contribute to conservation gains in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and opportunities to support education and research activities (Year 3).

4. Identified education and conservation opportunities for youth engagement within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 3).

5. In partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, established a cultural interpretation programme to enhance Kāi Tahu presence and visibility in the Park, including through dual language Te Reo Māori signage (Year 3).

6. Kaitiaki rūnaka are actively involved in management of the Park and have an active presence within the Park (Year 5).

7. Increased the number and/or level of engagement of partnerships supporting the restoration, protection and management of historic places in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 5).

8. Enhanced existing partnerships and developed new partnerships contributing to the provision of high quality visitor experiences in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 5).

9. Established work programmes in partnership with community and business groups to achieve conservation gains within the Park and monitoring to report on conservation gains (Year 5).

10. Reported on outcomes of conservation partnership programmes for natural heritage, historic heritage recreation, Kāi Tahu engagement and education/research opportunities, and their contribution to improving conservation outcomes for the Park (yearly).
1.3 He Kapua Kei Ruka i a Aoraki – Whakarewa, Whakarewa

*When visiting Aoraki it is common to see him cloaked in low cloud, obscured from view. Only when Aoraki deems it appropriate does the cloud lift for him to greet the many visitors within the Park. The whakatauki above likens this to the way that people of importance or rank should be able to choose how engagement with them occurs due to the mana and respect they hold within their communities – you cannot simply demand a meeting with a rakatira.*

*This section of the Plan includes the general policy for authorisations and activities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, which can be seen as guidance for how engagement with the rakatira within this Park should be undertaken so as to acknowledge and preserve their mana.*
General policy requirements for authorisations and activities within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

The policies and milestones in sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.17 provide the overarching management of activities across the whole Park. More Place-specific provisions are in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki.

1.3.1 General management

Objective

1. Management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park:
   a) contributes to the Department’s intermediate outcomes and stretch goals identified in the Statement of Intent;
   b) is integrated both within the Park and with adjoining areas of public conservation lands and waters, including Westland Tai Poutini National Park; and
   c) upholds and protects the mana of Aoraki and his whānau.

Policies

1. Restrict or close access to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, or any part of the Park, including the use of rāhui, following consultation, except in emergency circumstances, with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, where necessary for:
   a) the preservation of native plants and animals;
   b) the welfare in general of the Park;
   c) public safety; or
   d) cultural safety.

2. Encourage people and businesses undertaking activities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to comply with activity-specific minimum impact codes (Care Codes) as notified from time to time on the Department’s website.

3. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, Land Information New Zealand, the New Zealand Walking Access Commission, Mackenzie District Council, other agencies, adjoining landowners and the public, to integrate the management of legal roads and Crown riverbeds adjoining Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (excluding roads managed by the New Zealand Transport Agency), where actual or potential activity on or near these legal roads and Crown riverbeds creates difficulties, either by:
   a) managing these roads and riverbeds consistently with the values and management of the Park, including by:
      i) encouraging the public to voluntarily manage their use of these roads and riverbeds;
      ii) enabling the Department to manage and facilitate recreation on these roads and riverbeds; or
      iii) seeking active management of, and facilitation of recreation on, these roads and riverbeds by Mackenzie District Council; or
   b) stopping or resuming these roads, and transferring the management of the riverbeds, and adding them to the Park in accordance with national park legislation (see policies in 1.3.2 Additions to national parks).
1.3.1 General management continued

Waste management

4. Work with the New Zealand Alpine Club, the climbing community and the public to promote the “pack-it-out” method for the removal of all refuse and human waste generated by visitors from within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, where not disposed of in an approved waste receptacle, through methods such as:
   a) educating visitors on the impacts of waste on the Park’s natural and cultural values;
   b) undertaking a trial “pack-it-out” programme;
   c) surveying visitors to gauge attitudes and willingness to comply to the method; and
   d) investigating the use of bylaws to enforce the removal of human waste where no disposal facilities are provided.

5. Explore options, in partnership with Kāi Tahu and the kaitiaki rūnaka, to encourage responsible waste disposal within the Park that minimises the risk of waterway contamination and acknowledges the spiritual value of the waters flowing from Aoraki/Mount Cook.

6. Seek to create a litter-free Park environment and encourage refuse disposal at suitable sites outside the Park boundaries, by:
   a) working with concessionaires, local businesses and Mackenzie District Council;
   b) providing relevant information on refuse disposal to visitors through a variety of mechanisms;
   c) reducing visitor reliance on rubbish bins and other waste receptacles in the Park; and
   d) seeking and enforcing bylaws to require visitors to pack out refuse from the Park.

7. Take the following into account when considering the future provision and management of facilities for human waste:
   a) is consistent with 1.3.1 Policy 13, for the relocation, reconstruction or development of recreation facilities;
   b) using best available new and adaptive technological solutions to minimise and improve management of human waste at high use visitor sites including huts;
   c) requiring the pack-out of human waste at sites where toilets are not provided; and
   d) preventing any human waste adversely affecting the tōpuni and Park values.

Natural hazards

8. Consider natural hazards and climate change impacts when locating, building or authorising new facilities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to minimise the risk of damage or loss to the facility and minimise the risk to public safety.

9. Remove or relocate existing facilities where the threat from natural hazards cannot be safely remedied or mitigated.

10. Allow the natural processes of avalanche, debris flow, flooding and erosion to occur in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, except where public safety, amenities area facilities or State Highway 80 are threatened.

11. Inform visitors and concessionaires of potential natural hazards in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to raise awareness and understanding of natural hazards and climate change, while recognising they are primarily responsible for their own safety.
1.3.1 General management continued

Visitors and recreation facilities

12. Consider options for managing visitor use where demand exceeds capacity, and where conservation and social effects are evident, including:
   a) establishing or extending the use of a booking system, including for accommodation and related facilities;
   b) seeking bylaws to restrict occupancy of accommodation and related facilities and/or requiring people to book;
   c) reviewing the design and location of facilities, in accordance with 1.3.1 Policy 13;
   d) establishing restricted on-site parking (including user pays), off-site parking and a public transport service;
   e) removing or closing facilities to encourage or require the use of alternatives;
   f) managing visitor flows, such as using one-way loop tracks or providing information to visitors encouraging visitation outside peak periods or to alternative destinations; and
   g) reviewing conditions of concessions, at time of review, to manage demand.

13. Take the following into account when considering proposals for the reconstruction, relocation or new development of public recreation facilities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (including community-led or business-led initiatives):
   a) is consistent with:
      i) the relevant outcomes and policies in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki where the activity is proposed to occur;
      ii) the visitor management zones as shown in Map 4 and described in Appendix 2;
      iii) increasing the visibility and recognition of kaitiaki rūnaka and Kāi Tahu values;
      iv) a focus on managing use and demand in the front country and the consolidation of existing backcountry facilities;
      v) facilitating foot access into areas where use has declined due to natural processes and a changing landscape;
      vi) encouraging sustainable, carbon neutral recreation opportunities;
   b) consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and the public has been undertaken;
   c) adverse effects on natural, cultural, historic, recreation and landscape values are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
   d) the need for a hazard risk assessment for any development or upgrading of facilities in high-use areas;
   e) adverse effects on natural light cycles and natural darkness are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
   f) the facility is publicly available and the potential impacts of any increased visitor use, including by different visitor types, resulting from the proposal can be managed;
   g) adverse effects on visitor safety of encouraging inexperienced visitors into the backcountry can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
   h) facilities are sited and designed to:
      i) discourage activities adjacent to or within waterways, such as washing in the waterways;
      ii) minimise their impact on the landscape, except for some high-altitude huts and bivouacs that may need to be clearly visible for safety reasons; and
      iii) minimise risk from natural hazards;
1.3.1 General management continued

i) the provision of huts is in accordance with the following:
   i) is consistent with the outcomes of consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka;
   ii) the hut is readily available for public use; and
   iii) huts are designed to facilitate easy removal.

14. Retain the club lodges identified in Table 3 and on Map 9 within the Park through formal authorisations, and subject to:
   a) the club having a direct association with and undertaking activities in the Park;
   b) the building being maintained to Departmental standards for buildings;
   c) occupancy being maximised;
   d) the lodge being available for use by the public when not in use by club members; and
   e) consistency with 2.1.3 Policy 16.

Table 3: Club lodges

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Club lodge</th>
<th>Current location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unwin Lodge</td>
<td>Beside SH80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wyn Irwin Lodge</td>
<td>Just north of Foliage Hill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahr Lodge</td>
<td>Just north of Foliage Hill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. Make Park huts and campsites available to the public on a first-come first-served basis, except where a booking system is in place to manage high visitor demand or for use by family groups.

16. Reassess use and occupation of the Caroline Hut upon the expiry of the current concession in 2020 to ensure:
   a) recognition and protection of Kāi Tahu values with particular regard to Kāi Tahu values related to the Aoraki/Mount Cook tōpuni;
   b) consistency with the objectives, outcomes and policies in Part One of this Plan and in Part Two, Aroarokahe Place; and
   c) opportunities for use of the hut by the public to ensure consistency with Policy 9 of the General Policy for National Parks 2005.

17. Monitor and manage hut use for the purposes of visitor safety, visitor experience and revenue collection.

18. Manage camping next to huts and along tracks to protect the environment, ensure visitor safety and manage recreational experiences.

19. Investigate options for the future management of vehicle-accessible camping within the Park in the context of wider camping opportunities, including those provided outside the Park, such as:
   a) removing/relocating day-use carparking from the White Horse Hill Campground to an alternative site;
   b) managing the White Horse Hill Campground under a concession;
   c) creating additional campsites or overflow seasonal areas either within, or outside, the Park; and
   d) restricting camping at White Horse Hill Campground to tents only, and providing an alternative overnight parking opportunity for campervans.

20. Manage camping in the Park such that camping areas are rested or retired where natural, historic or cultural values are being affected.

21. Where this Plan identifies that charges or fees are appropriate, they may be reviewed and amended from time to time to take account of changing circumstances.

---

8. “Park huts” means the public huts managed by the Department and club huts owned and managed by recreation clubs, but does not include club lodges listed in Table 3 above.
1.3.1 General management continued

**Authorisations**

22. Manage (including when considering authorisation applications) Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in accordance with:
   a) the criteria for which the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area was nominated and the statement of outstanding universal values (Appendix 6); and
   b) the requirements for protection of the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve (Appendix 7).

23. Should grant concessions in a limited supply situation or opportunity:
   a) using an allocation process, developed in consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu;
   b) with common expiry dates;
   c) using the following assessment criteria:
      i) operator experience;
      ii) compliance with any existing concession(s);
      iii) mechanisms to avoid adverse effects on visitor experiences and Park values;
      iv) the range of visitor experiences proposed by the operator;
      v) avoiding the creation of monopoly situations;
      vi) specific criteria identified in other policies in this Plan; and
      vii) any other factor relevant to each limited supply situation or opportunity.

24. Should not grant authorisations where they are inconsistent with the:
   a) General Policy for National Parks 2005;
   c) outcomes, objectives and policies in this Plan;
   d) purposes of a national park; and
   e) visitor management zones on Map 4 and as described in Appendix 2.

25. Should work in partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to define and include conditions in concessions for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to:
   a) recognise and protect Kāi Tahu values;
   b) encourage respectful use of Kāi Tahu cultural information; and
   c) take into account relevant Iwi Management Plans.

26. Should include a condition in all concessions to provide information and interpretive material on the natural, cultural and historic values of the Park, and highlight the status of the Park as part of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area, and ensuring that:
   a) where the inclusion of Kāi Tahu cultural interpretation is deemed appropriate by kaitiaki rūnaka, all cultural material is designed with, and approved by kaitiaki rūnaka to ensure that it accurately and sensitively portrays and respects the mana of Aoraki;
   b) any potential impacts of activities on the natural values of the Park are identified and avoided; and
   c) all people are made aware of potential natural hazards in the area in which they are recreating.

27. Should include a condition in all guiding concessions for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park requiring no more than 50% of available bunk space in a hut to be occupied by the concessionaire and clients (unless otherwise unoccupied).
1.3.1 General management continued

28. Should include a condition in all concessions operating in the Park to remove all refuse and human waste generated by that activity where not disposed of in an approved waste receptacle.\(^9\)

29. Should require all new concession applicants to abide by the Care Code established for sustainable activities and the principles of leave-no-trace when undertaking their activities.

30. Monitor authorised activities and their effects on natural, recreation, historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values as deemed by kaitiaki rūnaka, and in partnership with, kaitiaki rūnaka. If evidence shows adverse effects are occurring, consider options to avoid, remedy or mitigate the effects, including additional restrictions.

Bylaws

31. Amend the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 to:
   a) change the name of the bylaws to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Bylaws;
   b) prohibit:
      i) the use of powered personal watercraft (such as jet skis), hovercraft or seaplanes on or within the waters of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
      ii) the use of powered watercraft on or within the waters of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, except on Tasman Lake and Mueller Glacier terminal lake where provided for in a concession;
      iii) watercraft speeds greater than 5 knots within 200 metres of the shores of Tasman Lake and Mueller Glacier terminal lakes;
      iv) overnight camping on or in a watercraft while on or within the waters of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
   c) require:
      i) visitors to the Park to remove all refuse and human waste generated by them where not disposed of in an approved waste receptacle;
   d) change charges and fees from time to time where these have been reviewed to take account of changing circumstances;
   e) restrict overnight camping in motor vehicles to designated areas; and
   f) include any specific Place-based amendments identified in Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki.

---

\(^9\) “Waste receptacle” means a receptacle or facility that is provided by the Department for the purposes of disposing of waste (for example, a rubbish bin, public toilet, or bulk waste disposal unit). See the Freedom Camping Act 2011 section 20(4).
1.3.2 Additions to national parks

General Policy for National Parks 2005 seeks the addition of unformed legal roads and riverbeds to national parks, to enable integrated management. Similarly, adding adjacent areas of public conservation lands and waters possessing recognised national park values to the Park, and where those values would improve the ecological integrity of the Park, would provide for more effective integrated management.

Many of the adjacent lands contain values that are also consistent with the criteria for natural values under the current Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area (WHA). Adding new areas of the Park to Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand WHA would ensure consistent management and give greater recognition to the values of these areas.

The process for adding areas to the Park cannot be achieved through the Plan, but the Plan does have a role to encourage and support such additions where they would contribute to the integrity and values of the Park, and to integrated management.

Map 6 identifies the potential additions to the Park.

Policies

1. Seek to stop or close the following unformed roads identified in Table 4.1 and on Map 6 and add them to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to enable integrated management of the Park.

2. Seek to add the following areas to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park:
   a) the stream or riverbeds identified in Table 4.2 and on Map 6; and
   b) the public conservation lands and waters identified in Table 4.3 and on Map 6.

3. Seek Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area status for any new lands and waters added to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

4. Seek the addition of cultural criteria to the inscription for Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area.

5. Undertake or support the relevant statutory processes identified in policies 1–4 in consultation with the kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the New Zealand Conservation Authority, the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, the New Zealand Walking Access Commission, Land Information New Zealand, Mackenzie District Council and the community.

Table 4.1: Potential additions – unformed roads

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition area</th>
<th>Map 6 Ref No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unformed legal road in the Godley River valley</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unformed legal road within Birch Hill Conservation Area</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2: Potential additions – stream and riverbeds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition area</th>
<th>Map 6 Ref No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birch Hill Stream (adjoining Ruataniwha Conservation Area and Ruataniwha Conservation Park only)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hooker River and Tasman River braided riverbed and valley floors to Lake Pukaki</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Godley River braided riverbed and valley floor to Lake Tekapo</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Map 6 Potential additions to the Park

Legal road
Riverbed
Public Conservation Land
Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park boundary
### 1.3.2 Additions to national parks continued

**Table 4.3: Potential additions – public conservation lands and waters**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Addition area</th>
<th>Map 6 Ref No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aoraki/Mount Cook Village Road Conservation Area</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aoraki Recreation Reserve</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birch Hill Flat Conservation Area</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liebig Range/Upper Jollie/Cass Conservation Area</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mt Cook Station Conservation Area</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parts of Ruataniwha Conservation Area and Ruataniwha Conservation Park within the Birch Hill Stream catchment</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.3.3 Aircraft

All aircraft, including remotely piloted aircraft (drones) and non-powered aircraft, require a concession or authorisation to land on, take off from, or hover over Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Three, nationally consistent, aircraft access zones are used to manage the effects of aircraft landings in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (as shown on Map 7). These zones reflect the different management required, and the likelihood of granting concessions, for aircraft landings.

- **Red Zones** are areas where a concession application to land an aircraft would most likely be declined (with some exceptions).
- **Orange Zones** are areas where there are complex issues to be managed, which require the use of limits and/or other criteria to guide whether applications for aircraft landings can be granted.
  - The Orange Zones have been further divided into aircraft landing zones, which delineate different landing limits within specific geographic areas (see Map 7.1 for the heli-ski landing zones, and individual Places Maps 7.2–7.6 for landing zones within each Place).
- **Green Zones** are areas where unrestricted landings can occur.11

The Department only controls aircraft landings in the Park, not the airspace and flight paths over the Park, but it works closely with the aviation industry to mitigate the effects of overflights. While an area may have no, or limited, landings, this does not mean that no overflights occur. One mechanism for addressing this is by identifying the desired tranquillity levels within the Place outcomes, as shown on Map 5. If ongoing monitoring shows that these desired tranquillity outcomes are being met, additional landings could potentially be granted.

**Policies**

1. Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators that they establish voluntary codes of conduct to manage flight paths which:
   a) avoid adverse effects on Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including Kāi Tahu values; and
   b) achieve the requirements of visitor management zones for the Park and the outcomes for the Places.

---

10. Collectively referred to as landings.
11. For Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, landings are allowed under the lease and so concessions to land are not required.
Map 7 Aircraft access zones

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

0 2 4 8 km

Landing zones
Aircraft access zones
Red zone
Orange zone
Green zone
Map 7.1 Heli-ski landing zones

Aircraft access zones
- Red zone
- Orange zone
- Green zone

Heli-ski landing zones

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

0 2 4 8 km

Draft Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan 2018
Part One
1.3.3 Aircraft continued

2. Should allocate the commercial limited supply aircraft landing opportunities in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park:
   a) within 2 years of this management plan becoming operative;
   b) in consultation with Aviation New Zealand; and
   c) in accordance with 1.3.1 Policy 23 and an assessment of compliance with relevant Civil Aviation Act 1990 requirements.

3. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings, excluding remotely piloted aircraft and non-powered aircraft, in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park with conditions requiring:
   a) membership of the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone Air Users Group (AUG), except for non-commercial pilots;
   b) compliance with any current standards or procedures published by the AUG;
   c) the installation and use of approved tracking systems and other technologies for monitoring purposes, including returning the data collected to the Department;
   d) the holding of and compliance with certification in a noise management scheme (noise abatement) approved by the Department for landings in the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier and Hooker Glacier valleys; and
   e) mechanisms to avoid adverse effects on kaitiaki rūnaka/Kāi Tahu cultural values.

4. Should not grant concessions or authorisations for remotely piloted aircraft in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park except:
   a) to support research, monitoring or the collection of material authorised by the Department; or
   b) for authorised commercial filming and photography, or sporting and other competitive events; and
   where:
   i) the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone Air Users Group (AUG) has been consulted;
   ii) conditions are imposed to avoid or minimise any risks, including notifying the AUG, at least 48 hours prior, of the location(s), altitude(s), date(s) and time(s) the activity is to occur, if it is within the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone; and
   iii) the pilot holds an unmanned aircraft operator certificate under Part 102 of the Civil Aviation Rules.

5. Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Red Zone, as shown on Map 7, except:
   a) for the construction, operation and/or maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic), or utilities (e.g. communication systems, transmission lines) authorised by the Department;
   b) for wild animal control activities in accordance with 1.3.17 policies 1–5;
   c) to support research, monitoring or the collection of material authorised by the Department;
   d) in support of Kāi Tahu cultural purposes; and
   e) for non-powered hang-gliders and para-gliders, excluding within 3 km of the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport Landing Zone, where:
      i) the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone Air Users Group is notified of the location, date and time of the flight before it occurs, if it is within the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone; and
      ii) the pilot complies with Part 106 of the Civil Aviation Rules.

12. This includes landings, take-offs and hovering.
1.3.3 Aircraft continued

6. Should grant concessions for powered aircraft landings in the Orange Zone, as shown on Map 7, only in accordance with:
   a) 1.3.3 policies 2–11; or
   b) the relevant Place policies.
7. Allow aircraft landings in the Green Zone, as shown on Map 7, in accordance with the terms of the airport lease.
8. Should not grant concessions for non-powered aircraft, other than hang-gliders and para-gliders, in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
9. Should grant concessions for non-powered hang-glider and para-glider landings in the Orange Zone, as shown on Map 7 only where:
   a) the landing is not within the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier Landing Zone;
   b) the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone Air Users Group is notified of the location, date and time of the flight before it occurs, if it is within the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone; and
   c) the pilot complies with Part 106 of the Civil Aviation Rules.
10. May grant concessions for aircraft landings associated with commercial filming and photography, or sporting and other competitive events, where they do not meet the limits and/or criteria for the Orange Zone, where mechanisms are used to address any adverse effects including:
    a) the use of a remotely piloted aircraft, subject to 1.3.3 Policy 4; and
    b) low-level flying (i.e. hovering) but no actual landing on the ground.
11. May grant concessions for aircraft landings in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park where they do not meet the limits and/or criteria in the Orange Zone for:
    a) the construction, operation and/or maintenance of equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems, transmissions lines) authorised by the Department; or
    b) wild animal control activities in accordance with 1.3.17 policies 1–5; or
    c) Kāi Tahu cultural purposes.
12. Monitor the effects of aircraft activity in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park on:
    a) the tranquillity levels in the Park; and
    b) the natural, historic, recreation and cultural values of the Park.
   If the monitoring shows:
    a) adverse effects are occurring, further restrictions may be applied; or
    b) tranquillity outcomes at Place are being achieved, additional landings at some or all designated landing zones may be granted:
       i) following consultation with the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, New Zealand Conservation Authority, kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, Civil Aviation Authority, Aviation New Zealand and commercial aircraft operators, including the Southern Alps Mandatory Broadcast Zone Air Users Group; and
       ii) using an allocation process developed in accordance with 1.3.1, Policy 22 (Authorisations).
1.3.4 Animals

Domestic animals (including pets) can potentially modify or adversely affect natural, historic and cultural Park values. Such effects include risks to wildlife, introducing pest plants, browsing of indigenous vegetation, damage to tracks and pollution of waterways. In some circumstances, the use of animals can also enhance the recreational experience of visitors to the Park, such as the use of disability assist dogs. The placement of beehives within national parks can lead to a range of adverse effects including impacts on indigenous plants and animals.

Policies

1. Should not authorise horses to be taken onto Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park except for historic re-enactment purposes.
2. Should allow dogs to be taken onto Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only in accordance with:
   a) Section 56B or section 56E (including disability assist dogs) of the National Parks Act 1980; or
   b) 1.3.4 Policy 3.
3. Should allow disability assist dogs to be taken onto Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park without a permit, provided:
   a) the person the dog is accompanying, including a person genuinely engaged in the dog’s training, keeps the dog under control at all times; and
   b) the dog is currently certified with, and wears a Disability Assist Dog identification tag from, a relevant Disability Assist Dog organisation.
4. Educate the community about the threats that animals, such as dogs, can pose to wildlife and conservation values in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
5. Should not grant concessions for beehives within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
6. Should not authorise any other types of animals to be taken onto Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

1.3.5 Bolts and fixed anchors

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park offers many climbing opportunities, including traditional rock climbing, mountaineering and sports climbing. However, the placement of bolts and fixed anchors to develop sport climbing routes is only provided for in the designated Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area within Aroarokaehe Place. There is a need to manage the use of bolts and fixed anchors to ensure that Park values, particularly landscape values and the safety of climbers, are not adversely affected.

Policies

1. Should allow the placement of bolts and fixed anchors in accordance with the New Zealand Alpine Club’s (NZAC) Position on Bolting and the Bolting Technical Guidelines and any other updated guidance for:
   a) mountain climbing; and
   b) sports climbing within the Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area (as shown on Map 14) in the Aroarokaehe Place.
1.3.5 Bolts and fixed anchors continued

2. Work with the NZAC, kaitiaki rūnaka and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, in consultation with other relevant groups, to protect and manage the valued recreation activity of sports climbing by:
   a) developing the NZAC guidelines for climbing within the Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area (as shown on Map 14), in Aroarokaehe Place and any other authorised climbing development areas;
   b) sharing information between all parties regarding bolt and fixed anchor management;
   c) encouraging visitor safety, proper use, awareness, education and addressing adverse effects, including cumulative effects on national park values; and
   d) encouraging the public to advise the Department and kaitiaki rūnaka of any accidental discoveries of ngā taoka tūturu or other protected New Zealand objects.

3. May authorise new climbing development areas (outside of the Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area, as shown on Map 14) where the following has been undertaken:
   a) consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board; and
   b) a full assessment of effects, including:
      i) avoidance of adverse effects on priority ecosystem units and threatened or at-risk species;
      ii) protection of Kāi Tahu values;
      iii) consideration of recreation use patterns;
      iv) protection of landscape values;
      v) adverse effects of tracks required to access the climbing development area and associated campsites;
      vi) fixed anchor placement and the adverse effects on national park and Kāi Tahu values; and
      vii) addressing safety concerns including avalanche and rockfall risks.

4. Encourage climbers using bolts and fixed anchors to provide a range of climbing experiences for different climbing abilities.

5. Encourage and support NZAC to take the lead on bolts and fixed anchor management in consultation with the Department, kaitiaki rūnaka and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board.
1.3.6 Commercial filming and photography, and competitive sporting events

Commercial filming and photography (filming activity) is any photography or filming undertaken in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park for gain or reward. Filming activities can include crew, film equipment, vehicles, aircraft, animals, sets and special effects.

Competitive sporting events, like endurance races, multi-sport and orienteering events, require a concession. These events provide an opportunity to educate participants about national park values, including through pre-race information and briefings. Adverse effects such as ground and vegetation damage tend to be minimal when confined to track systems designed and well maintained for the activity.

Policies

1. Should grant authorisations for commercial filming and photography (filming activity) in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only where:
   a) it is consistent with the aircraft policies in 1.3.3 Aircraft and the visitor management zones (Map 4);
   b) adequate public notification of the event can occur before the event; and
   c) adverse effects on natural, historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values, are avoided, remedied or mitigated, including by:
      i) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the event or activity is to occur or is occurring;
      ii) avoiding peak visitor times; and
      iii) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural, historic or cultural values.

2. Should require compliance with the latest version of the Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands13 in all concessions for filming activities.

3. Encourage compliance with the latest version of A Guideline for Filming within the Takiwā of Ngāi Tahu in all concessions for filming activities.

4. May grant authorisations for competitive sporting events where adequate public notification of the event can occur before the event.

5. May waive or reduce the requirement for public notification in circumstances where details of a competitive sporting event are not disclosed to participants in advance, if satisfied the adverse effects will be minimal and following consultation with the kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, and with the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board on a confidential basis.

6. May require the authorisation holder to ensure participants in a competitive sporting event comply with a code of conduct developed with the authorisation holder.

7. Should, in all authorisations for competitive sporting events, require:
   a) fire safety contingencies in high fire risk areas, including events being cancelled at short notice; and
   b) participants to be provided with information on national park values, including Kāi Tahu values in consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka, and opportunities for involvement in conservation programmes.

---

13. Jointly developed by the Department and Film New Zealand.
1.3.7 Fishing (including eeling) and game bird hunting

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving indigenous fish, including tuna/eels, and their habitat within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996 and associated regulations. Tuna/eels, as top predators, play an important role in freshwater ecosystems. Commercial eeling, habitat loss and hydro-development can all adversely affect tuna/eels, particularly longfin eels which are at risk/declining.

The Fish & Game Council manages sports fish and fishing, and game bird hunting in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. The Department works with the Council, including preventing the introduction of sports fish to waters where they are not legally present, to protect habitat values.

Policies

1. Should not grant concessions for:
   a) commercial eeling in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park; or
   b) access over Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, where it is required to reach a proposed commercial eeling site;
   to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.

2. Should not approve the introduction of salmonid fish to waters in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park where they are not already present.

3. Work with the Canterbury Fish & Game Council in their management of sports fishing and game bird hunting in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

1.3.8 Fire

Under the Fire and Emergency New Zealand Act 2017, Fire and Emergency New Zealand (FENZ) is the unified fire organisation responsible for both urban and rural fire services. The Department continues to have a role in managing fires in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park through an operational agreement with FENZ.

Policies

1. Should work cooperatively with Fire and Emergency New Zealand Fire Service, surrounding landowners, and the community to increase awareness of rural fire risks and prevent them affecting Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

2. Should seek an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 to restrict fires in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park to the use of portable cooking equipment only.

1.3.9 Grazing and farming

Grazing and farming is not usually consistent with the requirement to preserve national parks as far as possible in their natural state.

Policies

1. Should not authorise grazing and farming in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
1.3.10 Guiding activities

Guiding enables a wide range of people to explore places or undertake activities they may not otherwise experience. Concessionaires provide visitors with the opportunity to explore and understand the values of the Park and experience its beauty up close. Maintaining visitor experience is an important management consideration.

Policies

1. Should grant concessions for alpine guiding only in accordance with the following criteria:
   a) the activity is consistent with the visitor management zones shown on Map 4 and as described in Appendix 2;
   b) the requirements of policies for associated activities (such as use of vehicles and aircraft) are met; and
   c) no more than one guided group per day per concessionaire.

1.3.11 Mining and sand/shingle extraction

The taking of sand, shingle, or other natural material is managed by Environment Canterbury under the Resource Management Act 1991. An authorisation from the Department is also required for extraction activities within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation may, in certain circumstances, grant access arrangements over land and/or water described in Schedule 4 of the Act, which includes national parks.

Rock is required for maintaining State Highway 80 and other roads and tracks in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. Using material from inside the Park reduces the risk of importing seeds of pest plants from other sources.

Policies

1. Should grant permits for access arrangements under section 61(1A) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 only in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant provisions of the Act.
2. Should grant concessions for the removal of sand, shingle and other natural material from Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only:
   a) for use within the Park or for the maintenance of State Highway 80; and
   b) where adverse effects on natural, historic and cultural values are avoided, remedied or mitigated.
3. Encourage, subject to Policies 1 and 2 above, the sourcing of sand, shingle and other natural material from within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park for works within the Park, to reduce the risk of introducing pest plants into the Park.
4. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Environment Canterbury to achieve integrated management of sand, shingle and other natural material extraction within and adjacent to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
1.3.11 Mining and sand/shingle extraction  continued

5. Should grant authorisations for gravel and stone stock piles only at agreed locations, and where:
   a) adverse effects, including visual effects, on natural, historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values, are avoided, remedied or mitigated;
   b) the material is treated to avoid introducing pest plants and other organisms; and
   c) the material is used at the earliest opportunity.

1.3.12 Private accommodation

Under General Policy for National Parks 2005, new accommodation and related facilities, including encampments for exclusive private purposes, should not be permitted. Existing private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments solely for private purposes, is to be phased out, except where specifically provided for or allowed in legislation.

Policies

1. Should not authorise any private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, except for accommodation within Aoraki/Mount Cook village amenities area authorised in accordance with section 50(i) of the National Parks Act 1980.

1.3.13 Roading

Within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park the Department manages a number of formed roads, which can be used by powered vehicles:

- Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport Access Road
- Aoraki/Mount Cook village roads
- Tasman Valley Road and associated roadend carpark at Blue Lakes
- Hooker Valley Road and associated roadend carpark at White Horse Hill campground
- 4WD route along Godley River valley to Separation Stream
- 4WD route continuing from Tasman Valley Road end to Husky Flat
- Flood and river protection works access roads
- Short access roads to parking areas (Wakefield Falls, Hooker Corner)

Additionally, State Highway 80 (SH80), a legal road managed by the NZTA, is the primary means of access into Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and through the lower part of the Park up to the entrance to the village amenities area. Adjacent activities in the park are managed to ensure the safe and efficient operation of SH80 is not compromised. The Department works with the NZTA to ensure that maintenance of SH80 is undertaken in ways that protect national park values on all adjacent land.
1.3.13 Roading continued

The development of new formed roads for powered vehicles is generally considered inconsistent with the preservation of national parks in their natural state, except where future access is required for road metal extraction or for new facilities. New roads require the consent of the Minister under s55(2) of the National Parks Act 1980.

Policies

1. Should not grant consent for any new formed roads for powered vehicle use in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

2. Work with the New Zealand Transport Agency and its contractors to ensure they give regard to adjacent national park values when undertaking all actions necessary to protect, maintain, improve or realign State Highway 80 and associated utilities, such as:
   a) road protection works, including:
      i) bridges and surrounding areas;
      ii) flood protection;
   b) road maintenance, including:
      i) gravel and stone stock piles;
      ii) clean fill sites;
      iii) accessing pest plant-free roading materials, including gravel and stone;
   c) vegetation clearance, including:
      i) public safety (improved road conditions and visibility);
      ii) view point development and enhancement;
      iii) car parking development and enhancement; and
      iv) road alignment.

3. Work with the New Zealand Transport Agency and its contractors to protect national park values adjacent to SH 80, including:
   a) pest plant management and control;
   b) re-vegetation of surplus highway areas resulting from realignment; and
   c) shared resources where circumstances allow.

4. Work with the New Zealand Transport Agency to rationalise the State Highway 80 legal road boundary through Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park where:
   a) options for realignment or reconstruction cannot be accommodated within the existing legal road;
   b) the proposal is supported by the Department, kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board as being in the best interest overall for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park;
   c) there are no significant adverse effects on:
      i) threatened or at-risk species or their habitats;
      ii) historic and cultural values; or
      iii) landscape or scenic values; and
   d) redundant legal road is rehabilitated to a standard consistent with adjacent roading corridor management and contributes to protection and enhancement of surrounding indigenous habitats and species.
1.3.14 Structures, utilities and facilities

The structures, utilities, facilities and easements within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park relate to Department operational requirements, facilities for public use, utilities and the representation of Kāi Tahu values. Utilities (and associated easements) provide essential public services such as: telecommunications; electricity transmission; water supply and flood control; roads and airstrips; weather stations; and seismic monitoring.

Policies

1. Should grant concessions for structures, utilities, facilities and easements in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only where the activity:
   a) is of a scale, design and colour that harmonises with the landscape and does not have an adverse effect on the natural state of the Park;
   b) avoids adverse effects on Kāi Tahu values, particularly the Aoraki/Mount Cook tōpuni and areas of wāhi tapu or wāhi taonga;
   c) does not require exclusive possession unless necessary for:
      i) the protection of public safety;
      ii) the physical security of the activity; or
      iii) its competent operation;
      iv) the protection of Kāi Tahu values associated with the specific facility.
   d) will not adversely affect any waterways; and
   e) is consistent with any relevant Iwi Management Plan.

2. Should consider the following criteria when assessing applications to build, create or retain structures, utilities, facilities and easements in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park:
   a) taking a precautionary approach if the structure, utility, facility or easement is potentially vulnerable to the effects of natural hazards and climate change;
   b) whether the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic structure, utility, facility or easement;
   c) whether the activity is an adaptive reuse of an existing structure, utility, facility or easement;
   d) the structure represents or communicates Kāi Tahu history or values, following consultation and agreement with kaitiaki rūnaka; and
   e) the activity supports the health and safety of the public and communities.

3. Should locate any new structures (including advertising materials) involving the promotion of businesses and services only within Nohoaka Place and Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport.

4. Remove or relocate existing facilities where the threat from natural hazards cannot be safely remedied or mitigated.
1.3.15 Vehicles

Vehicles, both powered and non-powered, are allowed on formed roads, designated parking areas and only those routes or tracks within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park specifically designated for their use.

Powered vehicles include motor vehicles and some electric powered-assisted pedal cycles (e-bikes with a motor exceeding 300 watts of power). Motor vehicles include trail and quad bikes, and over-snow vehicles. The use of over-snow vehicles by concessionaires or individuals is not considered to be appropriate as there are opportunities for this recreational activity outside the Park. Motor vehicles are limited to formed roads, including four-wheel drive roads, associated parking areas and identified routes or tracks.

Non-powered vehicles, such as bicycles and mountain bikes, and low-wattage (less than 300 W) e-bikes can be used where motor vehicles are allowed and may be taken on other identified routes or tracks as specified.

Policies

General

1. Liaise with vehicle user groups to identify opportunities to:
   a) be involved in conservation programmes; and
   b) maintain the roads, routes or tracks they are permitted to use.

2. Identify, on the Department’s website, signs and other information:
   a) where people are permitted to take vehicles into Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park; and
   b) what conditions apply to the taking of such vehicles, including the requirement to remain on the road, route or track formation at all times where vehicles are restricted to identified roads, routes or tracks.

3. Monitor vehicle use within the Park and identify any adverse effects of use on natural, historic and cultural values, including Kāi Tahu values and on other recreational users.

4. Review vehicle use where evidence shows adverse effects are occurring, in consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka, relevant user groups and the community.

5. Work with the New Zealand Transport Agency to manage the effects of vehicle use in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park on State Highway 80.

6. Consider vehicle access restrictions at any time where:
   a) there is a health and safety risk;
   b) there is a fire risk;
   c) adverse effects on national park or Kāi Tahu values are evident or likely;
   d) priorities change for the provision of the road, route or track; or
   e) damage to the structure of the road, route or track is evident or likely.

7. Apply the following criteria when considering new opportunities for vehicle use:
   a) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, route, track or site is, or is proposed to be, located;
   b) is consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 4 and as described in Appendix 2;
   c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) on the road, route, track, or site and on natural, historic, or cultural values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
1.3.15 Vehicles continued

d) adverse effects (including cumulative effects and conflicts) on the safety and
enjoyment of other recreational users can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;
e) measures such as trial periods, restricted seasons, daylight use only, limits on
numbers and one-way flow can be applied if necessary;
f) facilities, including those associated with overnight use, can be provided if
necessary;
g) risks of fire and biosecurity (including the introduction or spread of pest plants
and pathogens) can be avoided or otherwise carefully managed; and
h) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle access (including
in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.

Powered and non-powered vehicles

8. Should allow independent motor vehicle, electric power-assisted pedal cycle
(e-bike) and mountain bike use only on the roads, routes, tracks and other areas
(including designated parking areas) identified in Table 5.
9. Should grant concessions for guided motor vehicle, e-bike and mountain bike
use, or mountain bike events, only on the roads, routes, tracks and other areas
(including designated parking areas) as identified in Table 5.
10. Should not grant concessions for the use of over-snow vehicles except as provided
for in 1.3.15 Policy 11 for management of facilities or utilities.
11. May allow vehicle use in other locations to construct, operate and maintain
facilities or utilities (such as meteorological or seismic monitoring equipment,
communication systems, transmission lines, flood protection works) authorised by
the Department.
12. Work with Mackenzie District Council, Environment Canterbury, the New Zealand
Police and Land Information New Zealand to manage motor vehicle use on
adjacent riverbeds to protect national park values.

Table 5: Powered and non-powered vehicle access within Aoraki/Mount Cook
National Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Vehicle access</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All Places</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access roads to, and including designated picnic areas and gravel extraction sites</td>
<td>Motor vehicles, e-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access roads and carparks for walking tracks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nohoaka Place</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All roads and carparks within Aoraki/Mount Cook village</td>
<td>Motor vehicles, e-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Aroarokehe Place</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hooker Valley Road to, and including White Horse Hill campground and day visitor carpark</td>
<td>Motor vehicles, e-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alps 2 Ocean New Zealand Cycle Trail</td>
<td>E-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Haupapa Place</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasman Valley Road to, and including Blue Lakes carpark Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport access road 4WD route in the Tasman River valley from Blue Lakes carpark to the end of the maintained route at Husky Flat</td>
<td>Motor vehicles, e-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.3.15 Vehicles continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Access Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasman Lake Track</td>
<td>Motor vehicles to enable Tasman Lake watercraft concession activities only (see 1.2.16 policies 1–4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed cycle route along Tasman from SH80 to Hooker Corner</td>
<td>E-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed walk/cycle route from Hooker corner to Blue Lakes carpark</td>
<td>E-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alps 2 Ocean New Zealand Cycle Trail</td>
<td>E-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pae Tata Place</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pae Tawhiti Place</td>
<td>4WD route in the Godley River valley to a defined vehicle end point at Separation Stream Motor vehicles, e-bikes and mountain bikes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.3.16 Watercraft

Some recreational non-powered watercraft activity occurs on the glacial lakes in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. The lakes are getting bigger due to melting glaciers, providing opportunities for guided powered watercraft on Tasman Lake and guided non-powered watercraft on both the Tasman and Mueller lakes.

Policies

1. Should allow non-powered watercraft in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only where carriage of the watercraft to the location of use is consistent with policies for associated activities (such as use of other vehicles and aircraft).
2. Should not allow independent powered personal watercraft in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
3. Should not grant concessions for commercial watercraft activity on any waterbodies in the Park other than Tasman Lake.
4. May grant concessions for powered and non-powered watercraft to support authorised research and monitoring, or for Kāi Tahu cultural education purposes.

1.3.17 Wild and game animals

Wild animals are managed in accordance with the Wild Animals Control Act 1977. In Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, the Minister of Conservation has responsibility under this Act for the granting of:

- concessions issued under the Conservation Act 1987, for commercial and wild animal recovery operations involving aircraft; and
- permits for commercial and recreational hunting.

Game animals are managed in accordance with the Game Animal Council Act 2013. The Act establishes the Game Animal Council and provides for its functions. The Minister of Conservation has the powers under this Act to designate any species of game animal on any area of public conservation land and management as a herd of special interest.
1.3.17 Wild and game animals continued

The Himalayan Thar Control Plan 1993 (referred to as the Thar Plan) is a Wild Animal Control Plan prepared in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, and gives effect to the Department’s statutory roles under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Conservation Act 1987 and the National Parks Act 1980. The Thar Plan sets a target of zero density for tahr within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Policies

1. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the Game Animal Council and hunting groups to facilitate the hunting of wild and game animals in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

2. Manage tahr in accordance with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan 1993 or any subsequent control plan.

3. Should grant authorisations for:
   a) deer, chamois, tahr, goat and pig carcass recovery, and deer, chamois and tahr live capture; or
   b) aerially-assisted trophy hunting;
   in the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park only:
      i) in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977;
      ii) in accordance with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan 1993 or any subsequent control plan; and
      iii) where the frequency, timing and location of the activity can be managed.

4. Work with recreational and commercial hunters to manage, by the most appropriate means, the control of tahr populations in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in accordance with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan 1993 to:
   a) control tahr populations to zero density where possible; and
   b) control to zero any new incursions into the Park.

5. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, local authorities, agencies and adjacent landowners/managers:
   a) when undertaking pest control operations for wild and game animal species within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park; and
   b) to avoid or minimise any future incursions of wild and game animals into the Park.
### 1.3.18 Milestones

#### Recreation

1. “Pack-out” of refuse and human waste has been promoted (Year 1).
2. Allocated the commercial limited supply aircraft landing opportunities (Year 2).
3. Pack-out of refuse and human waste from huts has been trialled, and recommendations made for future actions (Year 3).
4. Reviewed the aircraft, tranquillity levels and visitor experience monitoring results, and implemented any changes to aircraft landings as necessary (Years 4, 8).
5. A bylaw is in place, requiring people to remove all refuse and human waste generated by them, where no approved waste receptacle is available (Year 8).
6. Reported on success of the pack-out of refuse and human waste and level of compliance with the bylaw (Year 6, 8 and 10).
7. Monitored the level of use and effects of aircraft activity, including effects on tranquillity levels and visitor experiences, in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (yearly).

#### General management

**Authorisations**

8. Formal authorisations for existing club lodges located in the Park have been put in place (Year 3).

**Bylaws**


**Additions to national parks**

10. Consulted with relevant parties regarding adding:
    a) identified lands and waters to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area (WHA); and
    b) cultural criteria to the inscription for the WHA (yearly).
11. Progressed or supported the relevant statutory processes to:
    a) stop or close the unformed roads (shown as 1 and 2 on Map 6); and
    b) reclassify public conservation land lying within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park that currently does not have national park status (shown as 6, 7 and 8 on Map 6); and added into the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (Year 5).
12. Reported on progress with statutory processes for adding identified lands and waters to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area (yearly).
13. Implemented any decisions on adding any identified lands and waters to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area.
Part Two: Whāia Kā Paeroa Ka Tae Ki Aoraki

This whakataukī reminds us that like any rakatira or leader, Aoraki is surrounded by others. No good leader stands alone, and those surrounding them are often just as important as the figurehead themselves. Here, we look at those who surround Aoraki to make up the wider Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.
In a Kāi Tahu world view, Aoraki and his surrounding areas are seen as one continuous cultural landscape. However for management purposes, the Park has been split into five distinct ‘Places’ as shown on Map 8, to enable the Department to effectively manage the key issues facing the Park. The Places for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park are:

2.1 Nohoaka Place – includes the Village and Amenities Area, SH80 and the main Park roads, the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, the White Horse Hill Campground and adjacent carpark, the current club lodges, and the Blue Lakes carparking area.

2.2 Aroarokaehe Place – includes the Hooker and Mueller valleys and glaciers, Aoraki/Mount Cook, the Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range within the tōpuni and the slopes west of SH80 down to the Park entrance. The entire tōpuni is included within this Place.

2.3 Haupapa Place – includes all of the Tasman valley lying within the Park.

2.4 Pae Tata Place – includes the Murchison valley lying above its confluence with the Tasman River.

2.5 Pae Tawhiti Place – includes the Godley River valley and glacier above the river entrance into the Park.

These Places have been chosen on the basis of their specific values and issues for management. Together they enable an integrated approach to whole-of-park management. For each Place, the values, issues, opportunities and outcomes sought have been identified. The policies set out the actions required during the life of this Plan, and the milestones capture the key steps to achieve those outcomes.
2.1 Nohoaka Place

*(includes the Village, roads and airport)*

‘Nohoaka’ literally means a place to sit, and traditionally refers to the seasonal occupation sites that were an integral part of the mobile lifestyle of Kāi Tahu whānui as they moved around Te Waipounamu/the South Island in pursuit of food and other natural resources. Unlike a pā which was a permanent location of civic life, a nohoaka is a place with the sole purpose of providing a base to enable whānau to engage with their environment. This is likened to the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village and its associated roading networks which make up this Place. They themselves are not a destination – rather they provide the facilities to allow visitors to engage with the wider Park.

2.1.1 Description and values

The Nohoaka Place includes the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, the airport, the main roading corridors within the Park (including the Hooker Valley Road, the Tasman Valley Road, land adjacent to SH80 and the airport road), and the roads and walking tracks network within the Village and immediate surrounding area (see Map 9). SH80 is not included within the Place as it is owned by the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA) and does not have national park status.

*Amenities area*

An amenities area was gazetted over the Village in 1999 under section 15 of the National Parks Act 1980. This amenities area status acknowledges that for the Village there will be an emphasis on recreational and public amenities and related services, in contrast...
Map 9 Nohoaka Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

Amenities area
Camp site
Club lodge
Actively conserved historic place
Track
DOC Road
Nohoaka Place
to the preservation emphasis for the balance of the Park. The design of services and buildings within the Village has been managed to complement and be subservient to the wider natural landscape of the Park and to reflect the World Heritage Area status and International Dark Sky Reserve status which apply across the Park, inclusive of the amenities area.

For the purposes of management, the area gazetted as the amenities area has been referred to as the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village (the Village) throughout this Place.

Cultural values
Manaakitaka and ahi kā are two values of utmost importance to kaitiaki rūnaka within Nohoaka Place. Manaakitaka relates to the way that guests and visitors are hosted and looked after, while ahi kā is the concept of enduring occupation and “keeping the home fires burning”. Kāi Tahu consider that these two values should be expressed within the whole Park, but especially within Nohoaka Place, as it is the Place within the Park that all visitors will experience. To Kāi Tahu, this means that Nohoaka Place should have high quality visitor amenities within the Village so that all who visit are hosted appropriately. This includes providing an appropriate range of quality accommodation options, fit for purpose amenities, and places for people to sit, eat, and enjoy time with friends and family. In terms of roading, this means that people can easily and safety move around the Park.

To address the value of ahi kā, the Kāi Tahu presence within the Park – particularly the Village – should be clear to all visitors. No visitor should leave the Village without understanding that Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is a place of cultural significance to Kāi Tahu whānui. This could include using Kāi Tahu inspired urban design and landscape architecture elements, the further development of Kāi Tahu content within the Aoraki/Mount Cook visitor centre, and the return of the Kāi Tahu house (located in the Village) to the iwi so that whānau can visit the Park and continue to express their ahi kā.

Kāi Tahu have a strong belief that the Village itself should not be a destination. Rather, it should function only as an outpost that provides the amenities needed for visitors to venture into the Park itself and experience the mana and beauty of those ancestors embodied by the mountains.

Natural values
The Village has retained key areas of indigenous vegetation that include grasslands, shrublands and areas of lowland forest typical of the lower altitude ecosystems within the Park. Areas of forest are dominated by Podocarpus hallii (Hall’s tōtara) together with broadleaf species Griselinia littoralis, Phyllocladus alpinus (alpine tōtara), Pseudopanax colensoi (five finger), Pittosporum tenuifolium and Dracophyllum longifolium. The distinctive bog pine (Halocarpus bidwillii) is often found around the margins of these forest areas.

Large stands of unmodified Discaria toumatou (matagouri) shrublands remain around the stream margins, and in the lower areas of the Village where they co-exist with areas of indigenous grassland species, including Racomitrium spp., Epilobium spp. and Coriaria spp.

A range of indigenous birds and other fauna found within the wider Park environment also frequent these habitats, providing visitors an important opportunity to experience first-hand the unique natural environment of the national park. Species such as the kea (threatened), kārearea/falcon and ruru/morepork are common around the Village, while the kawariki/jewelled gecko (at risk), the Southern Alps gecko and McCann’s skink are present in indigenous vegetation in and around the Village. The continued preservation of these areas contributes to the natural character of the Village and its inherent value status as part of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area.

The Tasman River priority ecosystem unit lies adjacent to the lower regions of this Place forming the corridor along SH80 and around the airport, but is mostly located within Haupapa – Tasman Place.
Historic values

Many of the early access routes and buildings associated with early European recreation activities are located within this Place:

- Birch Hill homestead and related farm structures
- First “Hermitage” site and stables at White Horse Hill
- Storage and display of the old Empress Hut within the visitor centre
- Temporary storage of the Hooker Hut until it is relocated back into the lower Hooker
- Historic relics and information on display at the visitor centre

The old Empress Hut and the original Hermitage site and surrounding trees are being actively conserved, while the Birch Hill site is retained as an archaeological site but not actively conserved.

Recreation values

The Village sits at the end of SH80 and is the primary entrance for most people driving into the national park. From the Village, people can access walks and tracks by foot or by Park roads within the front country leading to the Hooker and Tasman valleys.

The Aoraki/Mount Cook Village is identified as a Gateway destination to introduce people to the natural environment and the outdoors in a safe environment that is easy to access. It provides opportunities for visitors and families to engage in a range of activities, including building an understanding of the cultural significance of this area to Kāi Tahu whānui. A network of roads and walking tracks provides opportunities for people to view the wider mountain environment as well as to explore local areas of indigenous forest, shrublands and grasslands within the Village. The Aoraki/Mount Cook visitor centre provides information on the natural, historical and cultural values of the Park as well as recreation opportunities in the wider Park.

Beyond the Village, there are a number of key front country destinations.

Three club lodges are located within this Place:

- Unwin Lodge, owned by the New Zealand Alpine Club (NZAC), is located adjacent to SH80 at the outlet to Sawyer Stream, close to the airport road
- Wyn Irwin and Tahr lodges, owned by Canterbury Mountaineering Club and NZ Deerstakers’ Association respectively, are located north of Foliage Hill, adjacent to the parking area at White Horse Hill Campground

Unlike other huts and camping facilities in the Park, lodges are primarily for use by club members only – they may be made available to the general public only when not otherwise being used.

The White Horse Hill Campground provides the only managed camping area in the Park. The basic level of camping facilities provided recognises the seasonal nature of the area’s use. Areas for camping, parking and overnight vehicle use have become more heavily used with increasing popularity of the Park as a prime destination. A mix of day parking, campervans and caravans, and overnighting vehicles compete for the one large parking area on a first-come first-served basis. The camping area is also available on the same basis without restriction on numbers.

Camping is also enabled under the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 within the wider Park, except within 200 m of a formed road, and 100 m radius of a hut.

The White Horse Hill area forms the main point of departure for a number of short and overnight tracks in the front and back country – including the Kea Point Lookout and Sealy Tarns day walks, the Hooker Valley Track Great Day Walk and the overnight track to Mueller Hut.

Unlimited aircraft landings occur in this Place at the Village helipad for Departmental management purposes and at Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport.
Map 10 Aircraft landing zones - Nohoaka Place

Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport
Landing Zone

- Landing zones
- Aircraft access zones
- Red zone
- Orange zone
- Green zone
2.1.2 Management considerations

In the last 10 years, the Park has experienced significant increases in the numbers of New Zealanders and international visitors coming to the Park, and changing expectations of those people for use of the Park facilities. The Village and front country areas within the Park have been subject to the greatest increases in visitors as they are the focus for the majority of day visitor activities. Continuing to provide a high quality visitor experience for rapidly increasing numbers of people has been identified as the key issue for the management of the Village and accessible front country.

This Place includes the main areas for people entering the Park and moving around the Village and roading corridors to enjoy the more easily accessible activities such as day walks, boating, camping and passive recreation. It also provides a point of departure for flights to more remote and backcountry areas of the Park. Ensuring the efficient movement of increasing numbers of people will require new ideas for transport and management. These ideas will rely less on independent travel and more on organised forms of transport, and include acceptance of the need to plan and book ahead for the chance to stay overnight within the Park, to protect the quality of the experience that the Park can provide. The overall outcome for the Park over the foreseeable future will be to ensure a continued high quality visitor experience that does not compromise the values of the national park.

A number of aspects of management are discussed below.

Village management considerations

The services and facilities in the Village support public use and enjoyment of the Park. They provide information, activities, refreshments and accommodation for visitors.

A key management decision is whether to increase the size of the Village to provide for more services and facilities as visitor numbers grow. The approach in this Plan is to keep development within the current Village footprint until it is at capacity – at which stage, further development of visitor services and facilities would occur outside the Park.

The practical considerations are the ability of the Village to support further development as it is fast reaching capacity. There are a number of natural constraints on development within the Village, including areas with high natural values and risks from natural hazards, including flooding. Infrastructure servicing the Village, such as the water supply and sewerage system, are also nearing capacity with increasing maintenance, replacement or upgrade costs.

The land around the Village is within the Park and unsuitable for development because of the preservation emphasis for the natural values present. There are also significant risks from natural hazards.

A high quality built environment in the Village is a priority because the Village is within an internationally-recognised national park. Retaining a high level of tranquillity within the Village environment will be important to protecting the overall quality of visitor experience and the sense of being within the wider national park. Managing the Department’s use of the heli-pad in the Village, for management purposes, will be an important issue to minimise effects on tranquillity and the visitor experience.

While many Kāi Tahu whānui see the mountains and wider landscape themselves as a representation of Kāi Tahu values and history upon the landscape, this may not be as obvious to other visitors. Currently there is some information provided within the visitor centre that explains the special place Aoraki and his relations hold within Kāi Tahu histories and identity. However, there is a desire to increase the recognition of this within
the Village. Some tools being considered include using Kāi Tahu inspired urban design and landscape architecture elements within the Village, the further development of Kāi Tahu content within the visitor centre and Kāi Tahu presence within the Village, and the introduction of dual Te Reo/English signage as part of a wider interpretation programme.

The Mackenzie District Plan does not contain rules that apply to development within the Village. Setting high and consistent expectations through this Plan for the standard of development and the incorporation of Kāi Tahu cultural values in design will ensure that the Village is an attractive and functional place to visit and live. Clearly identifying where development can occur and areas not suitable for development, as well as ensuring compatible activities and uses are located together, is a fundamental requirement for a cohesive and sustainable Village environment.

A Village zoning plan identifies where new development and redevelopment of existing facilities can occur. Management by the Department through an allocation process of the limited opportunities for new development ensures efficient use of the sites and that a range of services is provided.

The Village is home to many staff employed by the Department or by the businesses operating in the Park. A range of community facilities, such as the school, support the permanent residents. There is limited space to provide much new residential accommodation within the Village and it is expected that, in future, existing sites will be redeveloped to increase capacity, and/or staff will be accommodated outside the Park.

**Roads and road ends**

Increasing numbers of cars moving through the Park have exceeded the capacity for parking in road-end carparks and have resulted in parking spilling out along roads and into areas set aside for viewing points. A main purpose of Park roads is to provide an experience rather than just a route to a destination. Pull-off areas allow people to enjoy key views without endangering other drivers on the road. Road-end carparks are often constrained in size to minimise their impact on the natural values of the area. Increasing the size of carparks is not considered to be appropriate where this will intrude on the surrounding natural values and diminish the sense of being in a predominantly remote area.

The preference for management is to reduce the number of vehicles on the roads at the times of highest use without limiting people’s ability to access all areas of the Park. Providing a public transport service to run from the Park entrance at Birch Hill along the main roading corridors to connect with the village and road end facilities will be investigated as an option to address this. Establishing a carparking area outside the Birch Hill entrance, with associated visitor facilities, would need to be considered to facilitate such a Park & Ride type of service.

Specific provisions relating to proposals to develop visitor facilities at the entrance to the Park at Birch Hill (located on the Birch Hill Conservation Area) within this Plan will require a partial review to the Canterbury (Waitaha) Conservation Management Strategy (2016). Public submissions will be invited as part of the process to undertake a partial review of the CMS. These provisions cannot become operative in this management plan until the CMS has been amended.

Establishing cycleways within the roading corridors, adjacent but separated from the main roads, could provide a safe alternative form of access around the front country, reduce the use of motor vehicles, and give people a greater sense of connection with their environment. The relatively short roading distances within the Park mean that cycling provides an easy alternative to other forms of access.
White Horse Hill Campground

Changing visitor numbers to the Park have seen increasing use made of the White Horse Hill area, both for day parking and for overnight camping and overnight vehicle use. The seasonal nature of use has changed as well, with more demand through the shoulder periods and into the colder months of the year. This raises a number of considerations for future management of this area that this Plan needs to provide for:

• management of parking and separation of day and overnight vehicle use
• effective management of the limited camping area available in the campsite
• reviewing the adequacy of facilities provided for the increasing levels of use and the extended period of use, especially into the colder months
• separating the camping activity from the use of the Hooker Valley Track – managing the entrance and quality of experience of this track
• reviewing the future of the club lodges within this area

These issues are explored further through the spatial plan discussion below.

Club lodges

These are managed differently from other huts in the Park in that club members have priority use of them. Public can book accommodation only when they are not otherwise being used. Under the previous Plan, this arrangement was extended to existing club lodges only – any new application for a club lodge would need to apply for a site in the Village accommodation area. Clubs are expected to make full use of their existing lodges as a base for club activities. Where this is not the case – where facilities are not being regularly used through the year, or where the use is substantially for non-club activities – then the continued presence/location of the lodge should be reviewed.

Club lodges used for accommodation purposes now require authorisation from the Minister to ensure that the lodges and their activities are managed consistently with their purpose and with other structures in the Park.

The current location of the Tahr and Wyn Irwin lodges at White Horse Hill creates a number of issues that have limited the ability of the clubs to meet the requirements of the previous Plan for use of the facilities. Providing water and sewerage facilities is problematic in a remote location and requires a high level of maintenance. The location near Foliage Hill creates a situation in winter where the lodges have limited sunlight and are very hard to keep warm, so they are not fully utilised over the colder months. Club use has varied over the years with non-club use contributing a significant portion. Being sited adjacent to the campground and parking area for White Horse Hill has created some issues with available parking space that have led to some confusion and tensions between people using the area.

An investigation of future management options for these lodges would focus on providing year-round comfortable accommodation and the services required to achieve their required purpose within the Park.
Nohoaka Place spatial plan

A spatial plan has been prepared to assist with understanding and managing the future use of the Village and front country areas within the Park.

The process of developing a spatial plan has:

- shown the relationship between different users and uses in the Village and front country
- identified the critical issues and pressure points for management
- provided options/solutions to address those issues

The critical issues and solutions for management to emerge from developing the spatial plan are as follows.

1. Improving the quality of experience at the Village:
   - Reviewing the zoning of facilities within the Village to reflect the location of the Village within a national park setting and to ensure that ongoing management makes the most effective use of the available area
   - Ensuring that the Village remains subservient to the wider Park landscape, including Aoraki and his wider whānau
   - Identifying and protecting important natural, cultural and ecological values within the Village, including open space, view shafts and indigenous vegetation
   - Recognising the status of this area as part of the Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area, and as part of the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve
   - Providing for Kāi Tahu whānui expression of ahi kā within the Village

2. Traffic management within the Village:
   - Improving way-finding around the Village for people and vehicles
   - Improving the walkway network around the Village
   - Creating a one-way system for vehicle traffic
   - Addressing the capacity for carparking in the Village

3. Management of people moving around the front country roads and adjacent road-end areas within the Park, including:
   - Addressing over-capacity car parking at road ends in peak seasons and oversize vehicles occupying extra room at carparks
   - Managing the increasing use of larger private vehicles and increases/fluctuations in numbers of people driving independently in the Park
   - Improving the safety of all road users from the hazards created by increasing traffic volumes on the road, including dangerous stopping and parking along roadsides
4. Improving the White Horse Hill Campground experience by addressing the following:
   - Conflicting carparking requirements for day and overnight visitors
   - Lack of marked campsites resulting in no control over numbers using campground
   - Lack of facilities available to campers (showers, washing facilities)
   - Use of day visitor carpark for overnight cars and campervans
   - Cluttered entrance to Hooker Valley Track day hike
   - Confusion between publicly available camping and parking and use of the adjacent club lodges

5. Managing the Village and front country in the context of the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area
   - Limiting further development of services and facilities within the Park where these can be located/provided outside the Park
   - Integrating the provision of recreation opportunities inside and outside the Park to provide a complementary range of facilities and activities
   - Highlighting the cultural significance of Aoraki and the wider whānau of mountains within Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin

It is anticipated that some outcomes may not be achieved within the life of this Plan. However identifying long-term outcomes provides a framework within which the contribution of Plan outcomes and milestones can be recognised and measured.
Discussion box – Village and front country spatial plan

There are a number of issues relating to how to manage the increasing numbers of people moving around the front country roads and adjacent road-end areas within this Place. For example, the Hooker Valley road end has increasing visitor numbers with congestion resulting from visitors to the White Horse Hill Campground, day visitors accessing the Hooker Valley Track and the users of the club lodges.

The management of visitors to the Park also needs to be considered within the planning for the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area.

A spatial plan that sits alongside outcomes, policies and milestones for this Place has been prepared. It is of necessity a long-term approach to considering how this Place should be managed. Implementation of the proposals within the spatial plan may extend beyond the life of this Plan. It is important to start considering future management now, so an orderly transition of infrastructure investment can occur. For example, is it appropriate to construct large new carparks that destroy the natural values or to consider other ways of moving people around the front country and Village areas of the Park?

The Department is seeking feedback from the public about the proposed approach to managing the Place. The following discussion boxes provide additional information, to be read alongside the proposed outcomes, policies and milestones for this Place set out below.

1. Park & Ride and cycleways

The Park is already close to capacity for servicing the numbers of vehicles entering it in the peak seasons. It is anticipated that numbers will more than double over the life of this Plan, placing severe pressures on existing space available to accommodate people and their vehicles. There is limited opportunity for increasing carparking space at road ends and currently cars are parking along the roadways once carparks are full.

It is proposed to manage traffic within the Park during the peak seasons by the following:

   i) Trial a Park & Ride public transport service from the Park entrance on a seasonal basis (during times of highest use) to determine its effectiveness for moving people quickly and efficiently around the Village and front country.
   ii) Remove access for day visitor cars and campervans into the Park at times when a Park & Ride public transport system is operating.
   iii) Provide a serviced area for day carparking and overnight campervan stays outside the Park entrance, in association with the Park & Ride public transport operation.
   iv) Investigate options to remove all visitor vehicle access to the Park during peak use seasons, or to allow for limited vehicle access with evidence of booked accommodation.
Refer to zoning plan

Map 11: Village and front country spatial plan

Not to scale
2. Birch Hill and Park Entrance

The Birch Hill area adjoins the entrance to the Park and commands a striking location with views to the mountains. The land was formerly removed from the Park to provide space for staff accommodation facilities as an alternative to the Village Amenities area. The area includes large areas suitable for parking and would be the best point to control vehicle access into the Park. This area offers potential for establishing an entrance welcoming visitors into the Park.

The primary use would be for carparking and associated Park & Ride public transport system. Additional facilities could include an overnight camping facility for campervans and tents, together with a facility to guide visitors around the Park, including information on activities accessed from roadways and roadends; a booking system for flights, booking for accommodation at White Horse Hill Campground; and hire for bicycles and e-bikes.

Discussions will be needed with NZTA to determine the future options for management of SH80 within the Park.

Investigation of the need for an amendment to the Canterbury (Waitaha) Conservation Management Strategy to enable development at the Birch Hill site will be undertaken once proposals have been prepared. Discussion will also be needed with Mackenzie District Council in relation managing the area under the Mackenzie District Plan.

3. White Horse Hill Campground

Currently the White Horse Hill area is dominated by large carparks catering to day visitors, people using the campground and vehicles/campervans using the area for overnight stays. There is no clear separation of the different vehicles or campsites, and the area works on a first come first served basis. In the peak seasons it can become very crowded and difficult to navigate through the carpark and campground.

The facilities provided are basic, including toilets and cooking facilities, but a lack of washing facilities results in people washing in streams. In this part of the Park, this action is considered culturally inappropriate and offensive to Kāi Tahu values associated with this area. It may also impact on the quality of the waterways in the Park.

Located at the entrance to the Hooker Valley Track, there is a level of confusion and conflict with people moving from the carpark through the campground to get to the start of the track.

Proposed options to manage increasing people and vehicle use of this area include:

i) As an interim measure, provide separate areas for day visitor parking, campervan parking, and camper parking and create marked parking spaces. Create alternative/additional overnight parking for campervans elsewhere in the front country (proposed use of Wakefield Falls carpark in the Tasman valley).

ii) Remove all day visitor car parking and campervan parking from White Horse Hill during the peak use seasons once access is available by Park & Ride public transport operation. A parking facility to be located outside the Park.

iii) Clearly mark out camping sites and operate booking system. Develop landscaping to provide some privacy.

iv) Signpost route to Hooker Valley Track to keep walkers away from the campground area.

v) Maintain the club lodges’ parking area separate from the main campground carpark.
4. The Park within the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is an important part of the wider Te Manahun/Mackenzie area and provides a range of experiences that add to and complement the variety of visitor and tourist opportunities within the area. The Park should be managed as an integral part of this wider area, including exploring opportunities to integrate the provision of facilities between the Park and the surrounding Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin.

In consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka, opportunities will be sought to integrate the cultural interpretation within the Park with the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin cultural interpretation programme.

Except where necessary for safety reasons, there is a preference for no further development of facilities within the front country of the Park.

We would like to hear your ideas for future management of the Park:

1. What do you see as the main issues to address in the Plan to manage the increasing numbers of visitors to the front country parts of the Park? Note that our national park legislation provides free entry into the Park for all New Zealanders and overseas visitors.

2. Do you agree with the issues raised above and the solutions proposed? If not, then can you suggest some alternative solutions for the Department to consider?

3. What is your vision for future public use and enjoyment of the front country areas shown in the spatial plan?
Map 12 Village zoning plan

Proposed Zones
- Green: Amenity Open Space
- Purple: Protected Ecological
- Pink: Commercial
- Purple: Community
- Orange: Residential
- Yellow: Residential - DOC
- Red: Park Administration
- Pink: Visitor Accommodation
- Yellow: Cultural Activities

- Yellow: Pedestrian Pathways
- Blue: Stream boundary
- White: Amenity Area Boundary
- Grey: Buildings
- Grey: Roads
- Black: Overlays
- Black: Overnight Accommodation Excluded

0 100 200 400 m
Discussion box – Village zoning plan

The desire to improve the quality of experience and to address traffic management at the Village has been incorporated in this Plan through a new zoning plan and Village outcomes, policies and milestones.

The Department is seeking feedback from the public about the proposed approach to managing the Village. The following discussion boxes provide additional information, to be read alongside the proposed outcomes, policies and milestones for the Village set out below.

1. Zoning and development standards in the Village

The Mackenzie District Plan does not include rules to manage the built environment in the Village. This means that there are no detailed rules about what land uses are appropriate and the standards these uses need to meet. For example, there are no rules about the height, location and density of buildings on a site, noise generation, lighting (including recognising the Aoraki McKenzie International Dark Sky Reserve), hours of opening and car parking for visitors and staff.

This Plan is therefore the primary instrument to manage where buildings and other structures are located in the Village as well as the visual and functional standards of developments on a particular site.

The approach to zoning and standards in previous management plans has resulted in underutilised sites and buildings, variable quality of the buildings and insufficient identification of values which should be preserved such as open space, view shafts and indigenous vegetation.

Zoning plan

A zoning plan is proposed that will assign all areas of the Village to a zone (see Map 12 Village Zoning Plan). The purpose of each zone is clearly stated. Some zones allow for development and others cover areas that are to be protected from development. All new development and redevelopment is to be within the appropriate zone and consistent with the purpose of the zone.

Design Standards and Guidelines

The preparation of a Design Standards and Guidelines document is proposed. This document will contain the standards and requirements for buildings, developments and structures within each zone. The standards and guidelines will reflect the significance of the Park to Kāi Tahu, and the international status of the Park as part of a World Heritage Area and an International Dark Sky Reserve.

The Design Standards and Guidelines will sit outside the Plan but be implemented through the policies in the Plan. They will be prepared as this Plan goes through its approval process and will include public consultation as they are developed.
Village Landscape Plan

The Village’s pattern of development has resulted in no clear Village centre. The connections between different parts of the Village by paths and roads could be improved. There are different standards and approaches to landscaping around buildings and sites. Planning for a coherent approach to these factors will increase the amenity of the Village environment for visitors and residents.

A Village Landscape Plan is proposed that provides for consistent and high quality, well maintained landscape design across the Village. The Village Landscape Plan will sit outside this Plan but be implemented through the policies in the Plan. It will be prepared alongside the Design Standards and Guidelines, as this Plan goes through its approval process and will include public consultation as it is developed.

Design Assessment Panel

Establishing a Design Assessment Panel is proposed to assist in the preparation, application and review of the Design Standards and Guidelines and the Village Landscape Plan. The Panel would consider and provide advice to those proposing development and redevelopment proposals in the Village, within the Place and the front country visitor management zone and make recommendations to decision-makers about these proposals.

The Panel includes architectural and urban design and landscape architecture expertise with a representative appointed by Kāi Tahu. A decision-maker would take into account the Panel’s advice and recommendations when making a decision on a development or redevelopment.

2. Limited capacity for further development in the Village

The land suitable for development within the Village is limited and nearing its capacity for new developments. There are constraints on development within the Village including, areas at risk from natural hazards, particularly flood and debris flow (see Map 13 Village Flood Vulnerability), areas of significant indigenous vegetation and the capacity of the Village infrastructure to service more development. Land outside the Village is within the Park and protected for its natural, cultural and historic values. Much of the land immediately adjacent to the Village is also subject to risks from natural hazards.

For these reasons, the size of the amenities area will not be increased. When all sites in the Village are developed (including redevelopment of sites) new services and facilities for visitors to the Park will be provided outside the Park, most likely in existing towns and tourist zones such as Twizel, Tekapo or Glentanner.

There is a limited number of vacant sites available for new development in the commercial, visitor accommodation and residential zones within the Village. To better manage the development of these sites, it is proposed that an allocation process is used for this limited supply situation. The Village policies list the types of activities that are considered to be appropriate for these remaining sites and an allocation process may be by auction, tender, expression of interest, request for proposals, or other actions that may encourage specific applications.

With limited residential land within the Village for development, in the future some staff may need to be accommodated outside the Village and travel to work in the Park each day.
Map 13 Village flood vulnerability

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
2.1.3 Nohoaka Place – Outcomes, policies and milestones

Outcomes

Place outcomes

Nohoaka Place functions as a modern-day interpretation of the traditional Kāi Tahu nohoaka. It provides a place for people to begin their journey within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. It is a safe place to return to after experiencing the many wonders surrounding this Place; from the mana of Aoraki, to the various glaciers, walks, and climbs. Aoraki/Mount Cook Village is nestled within Nohoaka Place, and reflects a distinctive New Zealand and Kāi Tahu character through its site planning, design and architecture.

Kāi Tahu has a strong, visible, and meaningful ahi kā presence within Nohoaka Place – including both the entrance to the Park, and the Village itself. The relationship of Kāi Tahu with Aoraki and the wider lands and waters within the Park is recognised, respected, and appreciated by both visitors and locals.

Front country and roads outcomes

A Park entrance has been developed within this Place to provide visitors with a sense of arrival and orientation, and to facilitate options for the formalised and well-coordinated movement of vehicles and people within the Park. Existing roads are maintained with no new roads developed.

A range of parking options, including paid parking, designated vehicle type parking areas and Park & Ride public transport services, allow for well-connected transport flows, and reduced congestion in the Village and at front country arrival points. Public transport service is the primary means of visitor movement within the Park during peak periods of use.

Unwin, Wyn Irwin and Tahr lodges are well sited to be used and valued by club members and the public year round. The lodges facilitate access to the Park providing accommodation for members and the public and serving as a hub for club recreation activities within the Park.

Visitors in Nohoaka Place experience very low tranquillity in the vicinity of Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, medium tranquillity adjacent to State Highway 80 and Tasman Valley Road, but high tranquillity within Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

State Highway 80 plays an important role in facilitating access to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. Adjacent activities in the Park are managed to ensure that the safe and efficient operation of SH80 is not compromised.

Management of the Village and front country roads provides a well-connected system of routes and transport options that encourage visitors to explore the Park and engage with the natural environment.

Use of the Tasman Valley Road end carpark is well managed to the existing carpark capacity.

Carparking options and vehicle and visitor flows at the Hooker Road end carpark and White Horse Hill Campground are well managed through separation of vehicle activities.

Visitors choose from a range of high quality visitor experiences befitting of a national park that cater to the diversity of visitors coming to the Park.
Outcomes continued

Village outcomes

The quality of the Village’s built environment actively responds to the particular and unique cultural, natural and historic values of an internationally-recognised national park.

Visitors to the Park can access services and facilities within the Village that enable them to enjoy the wider natural, historic or cultural values of the Park.

Kāi Tahu has a strong visible presence in the Village and their relationship with the lands and waters of the Park is reflected in decision-making about Village development.

The Village gives visitors a snapshot of the home of Aoraki and his whānau, and an appreciation and understanding of the Kāi Tahu cultural values associated with Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin.

Management of development within the Village is consistent and coherent, recognises the wider environs in which it is located and the purpose that the amenities areas serves within the Park. The amenities area remains the same size and, when at capacity, future development occurs outside the Park.

The Village zoning plan improves the quality, efficiency and functionality of the available space, avoids conflicts between incompatible uses, and provides for limited future development.

Development of vacant sites in the Village is managed by the Department to ensure that a range of services and facilities essential for visitors’ safety and enjoyment of the Park is provided.

The essential community needs of the permanent residents of the Village are provided for, recognising that the Village is located within a national park.

There is a clear Village centre with well-connected and developed amenity spaces. There are quality easy short walks around the Village that showcase the best views and points of interest.

Natural vegetation areas and open space in the Village are retained, protected and enhanced.

Unimpeded views to Aoraki and his wider whānui from the Village are protected, to give Kāi Tahu whānui, visitors and residents a “sense of place” within the Park.

Development and activities in the Village do not dominate or interfere with the visual coherence of the landscape when the Village is viewed from within the wider Park.

Development does not occur in areas at risk from natural hazards, particularly from flooding and debris flows, and existing protection works are maintained.

Residents and visitors can fully experience the night skies of the Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve without interference from lighting in the Village.
Policies

Natural heritage

1. Preserve, as far as possible, the diversity and health of natural values within this Place, including:
   a) protecting the range of indigenous habitats and species, and natural open spaces;
   b) protecting the views of Aoraki/Mount Cook and surrounding mountain landscape visible from public spaces within the Village and road-end locations, and providing safe access to key viewpoints along the roading corridors;
   c) managing and maintaining all roads, tracks and roading corridors within this Place to preserve, as far as possible, the health of indigenous vegetation and habitats, view shafts and their natural setting within the Park environment;
   d) exterminating or controlling pest plants and animals within the Village and surrounds;
   e) minimising adverse effects of structures, facilities and vehicles on the dark skies “nightscapes” and natural quiet;
   f) providing opportunities and support for the public to contribute to conservation work within the Village and surrounding front country areas; and
   g) supporting the work of others to maintain and restore locally treasured natural values including ecosystems and species.

Spatial plan

2. Work in partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to integrate Kāi Tahu values into management decision-making within this Place, including the consideration of:
   a) establishing a physical presence within the Village and acknowledging the connection of Kāi Tahu whānui to the wider Park;
   b) incorporating mātuaranga Kāi Tahu into all aspects of management decision-making;
   c) the role of kaitiaki rūnaka in preparing information, advertising, and signage, and the interpretation of cultural information relating to Aoraki/Mount Cook; and
   d) the opportunities for telling Kāi Tahu stories.

3. Manage the use and development of facilities within the Village and the surrounding front country area to provide a diverse suite of opportunities for people to enjoy that complement the quality of the natural landscape.

4. Minimise new developments and opportunities within this Place where they can be provided outside the Park in the wider Mackenzie Basin.

5. Create readily identifiable, dual Te Reo/English signage and network maps for all cycleways and tracks within the front country.

6. Work with kaitiaki rūnaka, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, Mackenzie District Council, Environment Canterbury, New Zealand Transport Agency, businesses, concessionaires, key stakeholders and the Village community to provide for integration of the spatial plan for this Place within the wider planning for Mackenzie Basin tourism.
Policies continued

Roads and traffic management

7. Consult with the New Zealand Transport Agency and their contractors on the development of Park facilities, including track or walk entrances, picnic sites, car parks and visitor centres, which may access State Highway 80 and impact highway management.

8. Consult with the New Zealand Transport Agency to investigate options to include SH80 within the Park from the Park entrance to the road end to enable the management of vehicle use during times of peak use.

9. Investigate the feasibility and implementation of a public transport service to operate from the Park entrance to the Village and along all front country roads during periods of high visitor and vehicle numbers, including:
   a) investigating the transport options available and their feasibility for operating within the Park;
   b) seeking public consultation and feedback;
   c) trialling the recommended option; and
   d) reporting on the trial outcomes and the preferred option for the Park.

10. Manage vehicle entrance into the Park during peak use seasons by restricting all day visitor vehicles and all campervans from entering the Park once a Park & Ride public transport system is operating within the Park.

11. Provide for the establishment of a Park entry facility at Birch Hill to administer vehicle entry and a Park & Ride public transport service and any other related services to be proposed.

12. Support the establishment of a network of safe and well signposted cycle trails alongside roads and on suitable tracks in the front country, including consideration of:
   • SH80 from Park entrance to the Village entrance;
   • Hooker Valley Road to White Horse Hill;
   • Tasman Valley Road to Blue Lake carpark;
   • Lower Tasman Lake access;
   • 4WD access from Blue Lake to Husky Flat;
   • Old Wakefield track from White Horse Hill to Tasman Valley Road; and
   • Cycle routes within the Village.

13. Develop, in consultation with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, the New Zealand Transport Agency and the community, a Traffic Management Plan to manage the movement of vehicles within the Village and front country roads within this Place that will:
   a) improve wayfinding, pedestrian access, roading hierarchy and networks;
   b) identify day and night parking locations for the various vehicle types that visit or stay in this Place;
   c) identify short and longer-term parking locations within the Village and the time limits and charges that may apply;
   d) provide traffic management recommendations for:
      i) Village roads and carparks;
      ii) SH80 and Park roads within the front country;
      iii) the use of a public transport service;
      iv) the use of dedicated cycleways;
      v) road-end carparking and camping; and
      vi) a Park & Ride concession service operating from the Birch Hill Park entry.
Policies continued

14. Manage national park roads consistent with the management standards applied to SH80 roads and roading corridors.

**White Horse Hill Campground**

15. Manage the existing White Horse Hill Campground as a booked camping opportunity with a maximum permitted stay of four consecutive nights, and consider the following options to manage the site:
   a) improve the separation of day users from overnight users;
   b) redesign the carpark to designate separate areas for day carparking, campervans and overnight camper parking;
   c) improve the designation of individual campsites within the existing campground;
   d) redesign the access roads around the carpark to improve traffic flow and parking capacity issues;
   e) Interim provision of an alternative overnight campervan facility to reduce the pressure on the White Horse Hill carpark;
   f) removal of day and overnight parking (other than for booked camping) from White Horse Hill during the peak use times;
   g) implement a planting programme to visually soften the impact of the campground on the surrounding landscape and improve the camping experience; and
   h) provide for separation of the camping sites from the entrance to the Hooker Valley Track.

16. Work with the Canterbury Mountaineering Club, the New Zealand Deerstalkers’ Association and the New Zealand Alpine Club to develop options for the long-term effective management of their club lodges within the Park that meets the requirements for achieving authorisation.

**Aoraki/Mount Cook Village**

17. Manage the Village within the current amenities area:
   a) to provide services and facilities that enable visitors to enjoy the wider natural, historical and cultural values of the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park environs;
   b) by ensuring development and activities are within the capacity of the current infrastructure;
   c) by applying Policy 1.3.14 Structures, utilities and facilities to activities within the Village;
   d) to preserve and protect the natural, historic or cultural values of the Park, by not increasing the size of the amenities area.
Policies continued

18. To establish the following zones in the Village, in accordance with the Map 12 Village Zoning Plan:

   a) Commercial zone – the single area in the Village where a range of services and facilities for visitors and residents of the Village is located.
      In the zone:
      i) may authorise the existing activities on current sites within the commercial zone and their redevelopment;
      ii) may authorise only the new commercial activities that are set out in 2.1.3 Policy 23;
      iii) new development should have a focus on mixed use developments and maintaining a range of visitor accommodation types;
      iv) may authorise accommodation for an on-site manager where it is necessary for the operation of the activity;
      v) should not authorise overnight accommodation facilities in the commercial “Overnight accommodation excluded” overlay as shown on the Village Zoning Plan Map 11, because of the risk from flooding; and
      vi) should not authorise facilities for camping or campervans/caravans.

   b) Visitor Accommodation zone – a quiet area of the Village where a range of visitor accommodation is provided, free from other incompatible commercial uses.
      In the zone:
      i) may authorise the existing visitor accommodation activities;
      ii) should relocate non-visitor accommodation activities, as and when the sites are redeveloped;
      iii) may authorise new accommodation activities as set out in 2.1.3 Policy 23;
      iv) redevelopment of sites should only be for visitor accommodation;
      v) may authorise small on-site food and bar service facilities for only those staying on the site (not for the general public) as part of an accommodation facility;
      vi) may authorise accommodation for an on-site manager where it is necessary for the operation of the accommodation facility; and
      vii) should not authorise facilities for camping or campervans/caravans.

   c) Residential zone – for a range of housing types to accommodate staff essential for the servicing of the park and Village, who must live in the Village to undertake these duties.
      In the zone:
      i) areas are identified where the Department may develop housing for staff; and
      ii) may authorise new residential activities as set out in 2.1.3 Policy 23.

   d) Community zone – the location for facilities and activities that support the permanent and seasonal residents of the Village, including educational facilities, community hall and recreational facilities.
      In the zone:
      i) the tennis courts will remain until new recreational facilities replace them on the site adjacent to the YHA Hostel on Kitchener Drive;
      ii) when new community facilities are proposed, the Department will invite and have regard for the views of residents, expressed through the Residents’ Association or other groups representing residents; and
      iii) may authorise occasional activities of a commercial nature in community facilities, if they are for community purposes and consistent with the purpose and use of the facility.
Policies continued

e) Park Administration zone – provides for the facilities and activities that the Department needs to undertake the effective and safe operation and management of the Park.

In the zone:
   i) may authorise the existing activities within the zone and their redevelopment, including search and rescue, emergency services, local authority services/infrastructure, Park administration office and workshop depot; and
   ii) the Department’s administration office may remain at its current location until a new office is provided elsewhere in this zone.

f) Amenity Open Space zone – provides for areas of open space that contribute to the amenity of the Village.

In the zone:
   i) open space areas will be managed to protect view shafts into and out of the Village, provide open space areas for people, allow for regeneration and restoration of indigenous vegetation, and allow for paths for pedestrian access around the Village;
   ii) should not authorise buildings and development, except for:
      iii) limited development of facilities for day visitors such as a shelter, picnic tables, and parking, consistent with the Village Landscape Plan; and
   iv) flood protection works including new work and maintenance of existing structures and works alongside and within stream beds and flood outflow areas.

g) Protected Ecological zone – contains areas of significant ecological values within the Village.

In the zone:
   i) should not authorise development and buildings; and
   ii) may authorise vegetation maintenance, including trimming and removal of plants, restoration and replanting, and activities to protect and research the flora and fauna, if the activity is necessary for the management and enhancement of the area.

h) Cultural Activities zone – are sites where Kāi Tahu whānui can establish an increased presence in the Village, recognising the significance of their longstanding relationship with the Park’s peaks, lands and waters.

In the zone:

The Department house site at 1 Bowen Drive:
   i) should authorise cultural and educational activities and related overnight accommodation activities; and
   ii) may authorise commercial cultural-based activities undertaken by Kāi Tahu.

The Department Aoraki/Mount Cook Office site at 66 Bowen Drive:
   iii) should authorise cultural and educational activities and related overnight accommodation activities, and commercial mixed-use development that includes two or more of the following activities: commercial cultural-based activities undertaken by Kāi Tahu, education/research activities, a café, a takeaway food outlet, a small general store, bases for guiding activities/equipment hire or visitor accommodation.
19. Should manage the location of development (including redevelopment) and activities within the Village in accordance with Map 12 Village Zoning Plan and zone policies.14

20. Should protect and enhance views to the landscapes of the Park from within the Village when development or re-development of sites within the Village occurs, particularly the views currently available from sites and buildings in the Commercial, Cultural Activities, Visitor Accommodation, Amenity Open Space zone and pedestrian pathways.

21. Should ensure development within the Village is of a scale and/or location that does not dominate, reduce visual coherence, or interfere with the character of wider Park landscapes that contain views into the Village from outside.

22. Should regularly reassess the natural hazard risk areas (including for flood and debris flow hazards shown on Map 13 Village Flood Vulnerability) within the Village and seek to ensure that development and redevelopment doesn’t occur in these areas.

23. Should grant concessions for all new development and activities on sites in the Commercial, Visitor Accommodation and Residential zones in the Village, using an allocation process and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
   a) within the Commercial zone whether the proposal is for a mixed-use development that includes two or more of the following activities: commercial cultural-based activities undertaken by Kāi Tahu, education/research activities, a café, a takeaway food outlet, a small general store, bases for guiding activities/equipment hire or visitor accommodation;
   b) within the Visitor Accommodation zone, whether the proposal includes a mix of accommodation types at a range of price points; and
   c) within the Residential zone, whether the proposal:
      i) is for staff who must reside in the Village because of their duties;
      ii) maximises the amount of accommodation on the site; and
      iii) results in a rationalisation of the use of existing accommodation in the Village.

24. Redevelopment of sites at 1, 2, 3 and 66 Bowen Drive currently occupied by Department houses and an office will only be undertaken when the Department has relocated the current activities to another suitable site in the Village.

25. Encourage redevelopment consistent with policies in this Plan, the Design Standards and Guidelines and Village Landscape Plan of:
   a) the former Department house sites (1, 2 and 3 Bowen Drive), provided effects on the significant indigenous vegetation and habitat present on and around the sites are avoided;
   b) existing facilities within the Visitor Accommodation zone; and
   c) housing and its intensification in the Residential zone.

26. Should develop, apply and review periodically, Design Standards and Guidelines for buildings, structures and spaces in the Village and other development within this Place and the front country visitor management zone that:
   a) provide for recognition of Kāi Tahu values and incorporate mātuaraka Kāi Tahu into decision-making;
   b) reflect the international status of the Park as part of a World Heritage Area and an international Dark Sky Reserve;

---

14. Advice note – where applicable, the boundaries of the zones follow the boundaries of existing authorisations.
Policies continued

- c) enhance the quality of the built environment by ensuring:
  - i) design sensitive to the alpine setting;
  - ii) awareness of historical alpine precedent;
  - iii) coherence within the landscape;
  - iv) recognition of the Kāi Tahu cultural significance of the Park;
  - v) development subservient to the wider Park;
  - vi) world-class innovative design;
  - vii) consideration for environmental conditions;
  - viii) sustainability;
  - ix) appropriate materials for the alpine location;
- d) achieve the outcomes sought for this Place and the front country visitor management zone and is consistent with the policies for this Place, the front country visitor management zone and other relevant policies in this Plan;
- e) recognise the purpose of the amenities area, the existing approved developments, and any relevant existing authorisations that provide for further development on a site;
- f) manage and set standards for architectural and urban design of buildings and spaces, including treatments, materials, colour, height, density, form, site layout, view shafts (in and out from the Village), inclusions of Kāi Tahu design elements, car parking for visitors and staff, noise, signs, hours of operation, lighting (Dark Sky Reserve compliant), ancillary buildings, aerials and dishes, landscaping and planting;
- g) promote the use of sustainable design, practices, materials and services, including considering project life cycle costs where this will contribute to reducing the environmental footprint and improving the sustainability of the Village.

27. Should develop, apply and review periodically, a Village Landscape Plan that provides for consistent, high quality, well maintained landscape design and functional management of:
   - a) development and/or protection in all zones in the Village;
   - b) facilities for day visitors in the amenity open space zone;
   - c) a Village centre located around the Department’s visitor centre;
   - d) roading, access and footpath design;
   - e) landscaping (hard and soft);
   - f) restoration of sites affected by earthworks or building construction;
   - g) dual English/Te Reo naming in all signage around the Village; and
   - h) signage, wayfinding and interpretation information.

28. Should provide for public consultation during the development and subsequent review of the Design Standards and Guidelines and the Village Landscape Plan.

29. Should establish a Design Assessment Panel to provide advice and recommendations to applicants and decision-makers and assistance in developing, applying and reviewing the Design Standards and Guidelines, and the Village Landscape Plan.

30. The members of the Design Assessment Panel will have a mix of accredited architectural, urban design and landscape architecture expertise. A member of the Panel will be appointed by Kāi Tahu.
Policies continued

31. Should apply the Design Standards and Guidelines and the Village Landscape Plan to all proposed new or re-developed buildings, structures and spaces in the Village and other development within this Place and the front country visitor management zone by:
   a) requiring the Department and anyone else proposing new buildings or structures to use them to develop a proposal;
   b) requiring the Design Assessment Panel to apply them when providing advice and recommendations to anyone making a proposal and to the decision-maker on every proposal;
   c) a decision-maker taking into account the advice and recommendations received from the Design Assessment Panel when making a decision on a proposal.

32. The Design Assessment Panel and the Department should in the interim (if the Design Standards and Guidelines and Village Landscape Plan are not in place when this Plan is approved) consider the outcomes sought for the Village when assessing a new or re-development proposal on a site as well as considering the treatments, materials, colour, height, density, form, site layout, view shafts (in and out from the Village), inclusions of Kāi Tahu design elements, car parking for visitors and staff, noise, signs, hours of operation, lighting (Dark Sky Reserve compliant), ancillary buildings, aerials and dishes, landscaping and planting.

33. Should require all those holding authorisation for activities in the Village to provide the Department with a survey plan of the boundaries of the site.

Bylaws

34. Seek an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 to control:
   a) the use and parking of vehicles within the Village, including the setting apart of areas for parking and fixing charges for the use of such areas; and
   b) the use of campervans within the Village and the wider Park.

Milestones

Natural values

1. Reported on the health and integrity of indigenous habitats and species within the amenities area and recommended priorities for management (Year 2).

Cultural values

2. Kāi Tahu has established a presence in the Village (Year 5).
3. Visitors have an appreciation of the cultural significance of Aoraki and his whānau to Kāi Tahu whānui and to the management of the Park (Year 5).

Recreation values

4. The Design Standards and Guidelines and Village Landscape Plan are approved (Year 0).
5. The White Horse Hill Campground is operating as a year-round bookable camping facility with individually marked sites (Year 1).
Milestones continued

6. White Horse Hill carpark is redeveloped to provide clearly separated areas for day parking, campervans and caravans, and camper parking (Year 1).
7. Initiated the development of a Traffic Management Plan; identified issues and options; and undertaken public consultation (Year 1).
8. Undertaken a visitor monitoring programme at White Horse Hill Campground, reported on the level of satisfaction experienced, identified any necessary actions to improve the quality of camping experience and prepared a recommendation report (Year 2).
9. Undertaken a feasibility study to establish a Park & Ride public transport service within the Park and developed recommendations for consideration (Year 2).
10. The management of Tahr, Wyn Irwin and Unwin lodges meets the requirements for authorisation of club lodges in the Park (Year 2).
11. Developed an issues and options document to promote Park & Ride public transport service within the Park; undertaken public consultation; reported on feedback and identified a recommended option (Year 5).
12. Implemented recommendations for the future development of White Horse Hill Campground facilities (Year 5).
13. Achieved authorisation for Tahr, Wyn Irwin and Unwin lodges (Year 6).
14. Department accommodation is fully provided for in the residential zone (Year 5).
15. Implemented a Park & Ride public transport service operating from the Park entrance during times of high visitor numbers (Year 8).
16. Established visitor satisfaction monitoring for the Park & Ride public transport service with annual reporting (Year 8).
17. Reported on visitor satisfaction monitoring at the White Horse Hill Campground and prepared recommendations for any future actions (Year 8).
18. Reported on visitor satisfaction monitoring for the Park & Ride public transport service and prepared recommendations for any future actions (Years 9, 10).
19. Zoning plan for the Village amenities area has been successfully implemented and provides a well-connected, quality environment that reflects the distinctive character of the wider Park and encourages visitors to explore the Park and become more engaged in the Park and conservation generally (Year 10).
2.2 **Aroarokahe Place**

*includes the Hooker and Mueller valleys and glaciers*

Aroarokahe is the name of a female ancestor who travelled on the Ārai-Te-Uru waka alongside Aoraki and the other passengers who were turned into stone upon the landscape. She can now be seen in the Aroarokahe Range (formerly the Moorhouse Range), which sits in the middle of this area of the Park. Aroarokahe Place covers the south-western side of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, including Aoraki/Mount Cook himself, the Hooker valley and glacier and Mueller valley.

2.2.1 **Description**

Aroarokahe Place is a heavily glaciated landscape with extensive névés, steep ice falls, large moraines and the terminal glacier lakes of the Hooker and Mueller glaciers, which are expanding with recent and rapid glacial recession. It is dominated at its northern extent by Aoraki/Mount Cook, New Zealand’s highest mountain, rising 3724 m above sea level. The Place’s western boundary is along Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps, which is also the boundary of Westland Tai Poutini National Park (see Map 14).

The Place includes areas of permanent ice and snow and steep eroding mountains, with limited areas of flatter terraces on the lateral moraines of the Hooker and Tasman valleys and wide outwash river habitats.
Map 14 Aroarokaehe Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

Topuni
Concession owned hut
Hut
Sebastopol Bluff
climbing development area
Actively conserved historic place
Track
Aroarokaehe Place

0 1 2 4 km

Barron Saddle Hut
Sealy Tarns Track
Mueller Hut Track
Kea Point Track
Governors Bush Track
Sawyer Stream Hydro Power Scheme
Red Tarns Track
Birch Hill Homesteads
Sealy Tarns Track
Hooker Hut
Copland Shelter
Empress Hut
Plateau Hut
Caroline Hut
Sefton Bivvy
Mueller Hut
hooker Track
Alpine Memorial
Sebastopol Bluff
climbing development area
Topuni
Concession owned hut
Hut
Sebastopol Bluff
climbing development area
Actively conserved historic place
Track
Aroarokaehe Place

0 1 2 4 km
Natural values

Avalanches regularly sweep clean the mountain slopes in the upper valleys leaving vegetation in sheltered refugia between extensive scree and rock gullies. Historical glacial advances and retreats underlie these events with their age reflected in the stature and composition of the plant communities. The result is a complex mosaic of plant communities that varies markedly in space, time and altitude.

Two ecosystem management units (EMUs), the Hooker and Aoraki, lie within Aroarokaehe Place, but neither are ranked as priority ecosystem units by the Department. The Tasman River priority ecosystem unit (PEU) adjoins this Place along the western slopes of the Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range to the edge of the Tasman River valley (See Haupapa Place).

The Hooker EMU occupies most of the Aroarokaehe Place. It is characterised by steep ice-scoured mountain slopes formed by the Hooker Glacier in the north and the Mueller Glacier in the south. The southern part of the unit contains some of the very best examples of naturally rare moraine ecosystems in New Zealand, illustrating active glacial succession processes from predominantly bare gravel, to shrublands and eventually low forest on the oldest moraines. Diverse alpine herbfields and cushion fields thrive on the upper moraine gravels. High-alpine plant species populate the austere rocks near and above the snowline, including the alpine buttercups *Ranunculus lyallii*, *R. godleyanus* and *R. grahamii* and more than 14 species of lichen growing on the summit rocks of Aoraki/Mount Cook. Alpine grasslands such as those around the Ball Pass feature *Poa* species interspersed with various alpine herbs, such as white gentians which flower high up on the slopes.

Further down, low forest of celery pine, Hall’s totara, bog pine, three-finger, broadleaf, mountain ribbonwood and numerous small-leaved shrubs, is interspersed with the iconic and threatened Mount Cook buttercup (*R. lyallii*), and the large native daisy *Celmisia semicordata*. Hybrids between snow totara and Hall’s totara form a distinctive component.15 The East Hooker Valley offers some of the most spectacular displays of Mount Cook buttercup seen in the Park, flowering from late October through to mid-November.

Dense, small-leaved shrublands occupy the gentle alluvial outwash fans of the Hooker valley floor, dominated by matagouri, together with coprosma, mountain wineberry, *Corokia cotoneaster*, mountain ribbonwood and native vines.

Extensive and diverse woody cover is a feature of the lower mountain slopes, including pockets of silver beech forest.

Threatened fauna in this Place includes pīwauwau/rock wren, kea, falcon, southern grass skink and kawariki/jewelled gecko (*Naultinus gemmeus*). Important habitat for pīwauwau/rock wren includes all alpine areas containing rocky bluffs and sub-alpine–alpine scrub and herbfields within the Park below the permanent snow line. These areas are found in the vicinity of all of the popular alpine walks within this Place, that is, above Red Tarns and Sealy Tarns, around Sefton Bivvy and Mueller Hut, and along the Kirikirikatata/Mount Cook Range. A true alpine butterfly, the black mountain ringlet, inhabits the alpine scree slopes. The uncommon high alpine wētā (“Mount Cook Flea”) and giant scree wētā are found around Mueller Hut and Barron Saddle.

Cultural values

Similar to the whole Park and wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area, this Place has immense cultural significance to Kāi Tahu whānui as a cultural landscape. Aroarokahe Place has many landforms that link to Kāi Tahu whakapapa, and when seen in conjunction with the wider landscape, provide Kāi Tahu whānui with a physical and visual link to their histories and creation stories. By being able to see, visit, and experience these geographic features and landscapes, these histories and their associated values can be shared to the next generation and experienced in a close and genuine way.

This part of the Park is also home to mahika kai species such as tikumu, taramea and a variety of native birds. These mahika kai species are still of value to Kāi Tahu whānui today for many cultural purposes such as weaving and other creative pursuits, and the creation of tools and other resources. Some of these species also have spiritual significance. Mahika kai in itself is also a cornerstone of Kāi Tahu culture, and the ability to engage in mahika kai activities is a key way of passing on mātauraka Kāi Tahu to the next generation.

Aroarokahe Place is also of special importance as it is home to Aoraki, the ancestral mountain of the iwi, and a tipuna and rangatira in his own right. Kāi Tahu whānui are particularly invested in ensuring that he is respected at all times, and his mana is considered in all management decisions made that may affect him, or the waters flowing from him. This position is reflected in legislation through the tōpuni present within this Place.

The Nōti Hinetamatea/Copland Pass is in this Place. This is one of the passes that have connected East Coast and West Coast Kāi Tahu for generations as it leads from the Hooker valley on the east, crossing Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps, to the Ōhinetamatea/ Copland valley on the west.

Aroarokahe Place contains the entire Aoraki/Mount Cook tōpuni.

Historic values

The early European history of use of the Aoraki/Mount Cook landscape was focused within the Aroarokahe Place with major climbing trails up to Aoraki himself, followed by the development of huts and hotels for supporting the increasingly popular recreation destination. Kāi Tahu guides, particularly those from Makaawhio such as the Bannisters, were the guides of choice with early European mountaineers. People liked and felt safe with them, and comments in hut books written by clients recorded great enjoyment and fun on their trips. The Reverend Bower-Black recounts of a trip with guide Joe Fluerty (cousin of guide George Bannister):

“At my request, the Māori guide Joe Fluerty was assigned to us, and to say that we all liked him is a mild way of putting it. He is one of the senior guides, and has the Māori unfailing patience and good humour. He is capable and reliable, and his sturdy figure striding on ahead gave us a feeling of confidence and security. Joe was full of mischief and as ready as an Irishman with his tongue.

Apart from his numerous guided ascents, the one quality that fellow guides commented on was his uncanny navigation skills. He was known to have led a group over West Hoe Pass in “complete white-out conditions and with an unerringly accurate sense of direction, led [them] to Chancellor Hut.” (McKerrow, 2008)\textsuperscript{16}

\textsuperscript{16. The Māori in Westland by Trish McCormack}
This Place contains four actively-conserved historic sites: Sefton Bivvy, the Alpine Memorial, the first Hermitage site and stables, and the Sawyer Stream Hydroelectric Power Scheme. The historic Hooker Hut, built in 1910, is the oldest hut in the Park. It has occupied a series of sites in the valley, but was recently removed from its current site on the moraine wall as this became increasingly unstable due to the retreat of the Hooker Glacier. The hut will remain in storage until a new, stable site can be established elsewhere within the Hooker valley.

**Recreation values**

Aroarokahe Place offers a wide variety of recreation opportunities ranging from short walks and walking tracks adjacent to the Village and front country, to easily accessible day and overnight backcountry tramping tracks and routes, to more challenging areas in the remote parts of the Place, including mountain passes such as Ball Pass and the Copland Pass. Rock climbing occurs on bluffs situated in the south-east of the Place, in the Mount Sebastopol climbing development area.

The Hooker/Mueller Icon destination provides a range of short walks and day walks within this Place. It comprises the Hooker Valley Track, now designated as a popular day hike, the Kea Point Track and the Sealy Tarns Track. The Red Tarns track is a Local Treasure destination providing a day tramping opportunity.

Non-powered boats operate on the Mueller Lake under a guiding concession and people are allowed to operate their own non-powered watercraft provided that they transport them unaided to the lake. These activities will continue to be available over the life of this Plan.

The Department manages six huts within this Place – Barron Saddle Hut, Mueller Hut, Sefton Bivvy, Copland Shelter, Plateau Hut and Haast Hut. In addition, the concessionaire-owned Caroline Hut is bookable and available to the public.

The Mueller Hut provides a challenging day or overnight tramping opportunity for people with moderate tramping ability.

Easily accessible tahr hunting areas can be found in this Place. Chamois are seen throughout this Place, but limited due to higher tahr abundance.

Access to the more remote backcountry tracks and huts has been severely limited by the effects of glacial recession on the stability of the moraine walls that formed an important component of the track network. This has led to increased pressure for aircraft access to these areas.

Historically the Hooker Glacier valley has been managed to preserve an environment of natural quiet. Limited aircraft landings occurred near the Plateau Hut and Barron Saddle Hut. Landings near these huts can continue as well as on Pudding Rock, near the site of the old Gardiner Hut.
2.2.2 Management considerations

Increasing visitor numbers to the Park will have a key impact on this Place. Front country tracks are likely to experience the most significant increases in their level of use during the life of this Plan, due to their accessibility from the Village and their iconic status as a “must do” activity when visiting the Park.

Natural values

A key challenge will be to maintain the quality of visitor experiences while ensuring the protection of the natural, historic, cultural and recreational values of the Place. Providing high quality information and interpretation of cultural and biodiversity values will be critical to creating greater understanding and respect for the important values of this Place. The ability for people to experience these values within easy access of the Village provides a unique opportunity to encourage people to value the Park and support its protection.

Populations of tahr are at moderate levels with frequent incursions coming in from the southern and western boundaries of the Place, including along the Main Divide adjacent to the Westland Tai Poutini National Park. Kāi Tahu have a desire to remove all tahr from the Aroarokaehe Place. Controlling all new incursions to zero density will be key to control in the long term.

Pest weed and animal control priorities need to be established to provide protection of natural values – both for existing pests and for potential new arrivals, i.e. pig, wallaby, some plants.

Recreational values

Seasonal and daily variations in visitor numbers and flows will require flexible management approaches towards visitors and visitor facilities to ensure a quality experience can be sustained. Some opportunities within the Aroarokaehe Place to maintain the quality of the visitor experience over the life of this Plan include:

- Encouraging visitors to visit at ‘off-season’ periods, to reduce the levels at peak seasons, and enable people to experience the Park in different seasonal conditions
- Visitors could be encouraged to walk the tracks outside the peak times of the day to reduce the numbers on the tracks at any time
- Limiting use by requiring people to book for use of accommodation facilities
- Re-designing the Hooker Valley Track to reduce the effects of visitor crowding at peak times
- Creating an additional day or overnight walking experience that complements the Hooker Track experience
- Restoration of the Hooker Hut back into the Hooker valley
- Providing interpretation of cultural and natural values found in this Place
- Designing and managing tracks and facilities to preserve a high level of tranquillity by minimising the impact of anthropocentric noise levels on people visiting and recreating in the Hooker valley

Increasing limitations for foot access to the backcountry areas as glaciers retreat has led to pressure by some groups for access by aircraft to key huts and climbing routes. This has the potential to impact on protection of the natural quiet value of the area, and to cause conflict for those who still wish to walk into a remote area. Maintaining opportunities for a range of backcountry experiences within the Hooker valley will be a key consideration for any new proposal for aircraft access.
Maintaining natural quiet has been a key outcome for the Hooker valley but to date there has been limited understanding of the current state of tranquillity existing in this Place. The flight paths taken by aircraft operators to reach their landing sites or when flying over the Park have a key influence on the level of tranquillity experienced by people on the ground. Using the Tranquillity Mapping Tool (TMT) to map the soundscape for the Place has enabled the Department to understand the current levels of tranquillity experienced in different parts of the Place under the current management of aircraft landings and to look to ways to increase tranquillity to higher levels where this is not currently being achieved. The use of powered watercraft on lakes in the Park will also contribute to lower tranquillity levels.

Two new aircraft landing locations have been proposed in the north of the Place – at the old Gardiner hut site and the Grand Plateau – to provide safe access to the backcountry area and to ascents of Aoraki/Mount Cook. It is proposed that use of these new landing sites will be restricted, both seasonally (limited from November to March) and in the number of landings permitted, to limit the impacts of aircraft on the tranquillity levels for the valley.

To maintain natural quiet and high levels of tranquillity within this Place the Department needs to advocate to aircraft operators that they use flight paths: over Haupapa Place to reach the Grand Plateau Landing Zone and Pudding Rock Landing Zone; and from south of the Park to reach the Barron Saddle Hut Landing Zone.

Waste management

Managing waste, including human waste, at backcountry huts and elsewhere within this Place requires careful management as numbers of visitors increase. The Department, Kāi Tahu and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board support efforts to encourage the removal of all waste from the Park, and especially from within the tōpunī area. A focus for the Department is working closely with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to find long-term solutions for managing waste. A number of solutions to be investigated include:

• the long-term goal to move towards a “pack out” approach for all waste
• a short-term goal within the life of this Plan to trial the packing out of waste from the smaller huts and areas where no receptacles are provided for its disposal
• investigation of improved waste disposal systems that are suitable for the climatic conditions in the Park
Map 15 Aircraft landing zones - Aroarokaehe Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

Landing zones

Aircraft access zones
- Red zone
- Orange zone
- Green zone
- 100 m radius around landing site

- Landing zones
- Barron Saddle Hut
- Grand Plateau
- Pudding Rock
2.2.3 Aroarokaehhe Place – Outcomes, policies and milestones

Outcomes

Natural values

Habitat management and monitoring programmes contribute to thriving populations of endemic and threatened species such as pīwauwau/rock wren and kea. In partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka, key agencies and community groups, landscape-scale pest control programmes are established and providing effective protection for indigenous species within the Place from the impacts of introduced species.

Tahr are managed to zero density within the Hooker valley and all new incursions are being effectively controlled to zero.

Cultural values

Aroarokaehhe Place is acknowledged as the home of various Kāi Tahu ancestors, including Aoraki himself. This is achieved by ensuring that historic and cultural heritage values – particularly (but not limited to) within the Aoraki tōpuni area – are identified, conserved and correctly interpreted in partnership with kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

Visitors to this area, particularly within the Icon destinations, have their experience enriched through cultural interpretation drawing their awareness to the significance of this area and its waters and landforms to Kāi Tahu.

Recreational values

The Mueller Glacier and lower Hooker Glacier valleys remain free of aircraft and other motorised vehicle noise, allowing visitors to experience natural quiet and very high tranquillity. A 1 nautical mile “no-fly” zone around Aoraki/Mount Cook respects the cultural significance of the mountain.

The Hooker/Mueller tracks Icon destination provides world-class short and day walks where informative interpretation enables visitors to appreciate and learn about the Park’s values.

Proactive management of Icon destinations maintains high quality visitor experiences, with social and environmental impacts minimised through good facility development and design, and visitor flow management and control.

New day walk and overnight experiences close to the Village provide visitors with options for less crowded day and overnight walks, without adversely affecting habitats of threatened species.

The Hooker Hut has been returned to the Hooker valley as a bookable overnight opportunity.

Guided activities provide opportunities for visitors to gain an increased appreciation of the spectacular scenery and natural values of this Place, and to hear the stories associated with the cultural and historical values. Guided activities are managed to protect the experience of other independent users.
Outcomes continued

Overnight use of all huts is managed to avoid overcrowding and visitor conflict, and to ensure an exceptional and safe experience for all users. Visitors can expect to book hut use where the level of demand is high. Accommodation at Caroline Hut is well used by guided clients and available to be booked by the public at other times.

Camping next to huts and along tracks, including the Ball Pass route, has minimal impacts on the environment.

Foot access into the backcountry is fostered where this is safe, enabling those with the required skills and fitness to experience more remote areas of the Park.

Sebastopol Bluffs are maintained as the primary sports climbing location in the Park.

Waste management

All visitors dispose of rubbish and human waste responsibly, and pack out waste where waste receptacles are not provided.

Policies

Recreation

1. Maintain quality recreational experiences in the Aroarokaehe Place by:
   a) protecting the experience of natural quiet within the Hooker valley;
   b) recognising and respecting the tōpuni; and
   c) encouraging visitors to experience nature on its own terms.

2. Investigate new recreation opportunities in the Aroarokaehe Place, only where they will contribute to the range and high quality of experiences available within this Place, while ensuring the protection of natural and cultural values important to the Place, including the protection of natural quiet and high tranquillity levels.

3. Provide new day and overnight walking facilities within the Aroarokaehe Place to enable effective management of overcrowding on existing high-use tracks, only where:
   a) they are consistent with 1.3.1 Policy 13;
   b) they provide a safe walking environment; and
   c) they will not adversely impact on the long-term preservation of threatened species and their habitats.

Fixed anchors

4. Work with the New Zealand Alpine Club (NZAC) and other relevant groups to encourage precautionary approach to the placement of bolts and fixed anchors within the Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area as shown on Map 14, in accordance with:
   a) 1.3.5 policies 1–5;
   b) the NZAC’s Position on Bolting (2010);
   c) the Bolting Technique Guidelines (2005);
   d) any specific guidelines for climbing within the Sebastopol Bluffs Climbing Development Area.
Policies continued

**Watercraft**

5. Should not allow powered watercraft on any lake in Aroarokaeha Place, except where allowed under an existing concession.

**Camping**

6. Should not allow camping in the Aroarokaeha Place within 100 m of a hut and 200 m of a track, except for camping next to Mueller Hut.

**Structures**

7. Deem the Caroline Hut public shelter to be an emergency shelter where camping in the shelter is prohibited except in emergencies.

8. Maintain a booking system for staying overnight in Mueller Hut, and for camping next to the hut, to:
   a) manage public and concession use; and
   b) ensure equitable allocation of space between guided and independent walkers.

9. Should grant concessions for guided groups staying overnight in Mueller Hut or the adjacent camping area, only in accordance with the following:
   a) they pre-book their stay using the Department’s booking system;
   b) only one concessionaire group is present at the hut and camping area on any one night;
   c) each concessionaire can book a maximum of two nights in any one week and eight nights in any calendar month;
   d) concession groups include a maximum of six clients plus one guide; and
   e) no concessionaire lockers are provided.

**Aircraft**

10. Should grant concessions for commercial aircraft landings in Aroarokaeha Place, using an allocation process, only within the following landing zones, as shown on Map 15, and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
    a) Grand Plateau Landing Zone – no more than 10 landings per day;
    b) Pudding Rock Landing Zone – no more than 6 landings per day, between 1 November and 28/29 February; and
    c) Barron Saddle Hut Landing Zone –
        i) no more than 10 landings per day, between 8 am and 6 pm only; and
        ii) aircraft to shut down on landing, if the pilot leaves the aircraft.

11. Should not grant concessions for non-commercial powered aircraft landings in Aroarokaeha Place.
Bylaws

12. Should seek an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 to provide for the following:
   a) camping next to Mueller Hut;
   b) require people to book before staying in Mueller Hut, and for camping next to the hut, and prohibit people from staying more than two consecutive nights;
   c) require people to book before staying at White Horse Hill Campground and prohibit people from staying more than four consecutive nights;
   d) require people to book before staying in the Hooker Hut after the hut has been re-sited in the Hooker valley and prohibit people from staying more than two consecutive nights;
   e) prohibit camping within 500 m of the Hooker Valley Track and 200 m from other tracks;
   f) prohibit overnight camping in or next to the Caroline Hut public shelter except in an emergency;
   g) remove the prohibition on camping on the Mount Cook/Westland Alpine track (including the Copland Track) and all land within 500 m on either side of that track;
   h) prohibit the use of powered watercraft in the Aorarokahe Place.

13. After investigation, should seek to amend the Mount Cook National Park bylaws, if required, to provide for the following:
   a) require people who park, or leave parked, any vehicle at public carparks in the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village and at the Hooker valley and Tasman valley road ends, or at other formal or informal parking areas in this Place, to pay a daily or seasonal parking charge; and
   b) require people to book before staying at huts other than the Hooker and Mueller huts, where increasing demand is exceeding the capacity of the hut, and prohibit people from staying more than two consecutive nights.

Milestones

Recreation values

1. Re-established Hooker Hut in the Hooker valley for use as an overnight bookable facility (Year 1).

2. Monitored the use of and visitor experiences on, existing day and overnight walking tracks and made recommendations for providing new day and overnight walking tracks and facilities to cater for visitor numbers (Year 2).

3. Monitored the use of huts other than the Hooker and Mueller huts and made recommendations on the need to implement a booking system, through an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 (Year 3).

4. Implemented any recommendations to amend the Park bylaws in relation to vehicle parking in public areas within this Place (Year 5).

5. Established at least one new walking track as recommended from monitoring of visitor use (Year 5).

6. Reported on levels of visitor use on all walking tracks in this Place (Years 5, 7 and 9).
2.3 Haupapa Place

*(includes the upper catchment of the Tasman River from the Park entrance)*

Haupapa is the Kāi Tahu name for the Tasman Glacier. This name describes the frost and ice that are iconic to the glacier and its surrounding area which make up the part of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park covered in this Place. Centred around Haupapa/Tasman Glacier, this Place runs the length of the glacier, and follows the journey of the waters as it melts from the glacier and flows through Tasman Lake, into Te Awa Whakamau – one of the unique braided river systems within the Park – and then to the south-east boundary of the Park where the waters meet Lake Pūkaki.

2.3.1 Description and values

Extending along Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps from Mount Haast in the south to Mount Ellie De Beaumont in the north and across to Malte Brun Range, Haupapa Place includes the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier from its névés down to the valley floor, the Tasman Lake and the lower Tasman braided riverbed land adjacent to the airport, and continuing alongside SH80 to the southern boundary of the Park at Birch Hill (see Map 16).
Map 16 Haupapa Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
Natural values

Two ecosystem management units are found within the Haupapa Place: the Tasman River priority ecosystem unit (PEU) and the Aoraki ecosystem management unit (EMU). The Tasman River PEU includes the entire Tasman River braided riverbed extending from its outlet downstream of the Tasman Lake down to the head of Lake Pukaki. The Aoraki EMU extends across the remainder of this Place, including Tasman Lake, the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier valley and moraines, and the western faces of the Malte Brun range.

While only a small portion of the Tasman River PEU sits within the Park, the protection of this section of the Tasman River will be very important for the integrity of the entire Tasman River braided riverbed ecosystems extending down to Lake Pukaki.

The Tasman River is an important part of the Project River Recovery braided river and wetland ecosystems restoration programme. These braided river ecosystems include many rare and threatened birds such as nutu pare/wrybill, tūturiwhatu/banded dotterel, tara piroe/black-fronted tern, tārāpunga/black-billed gull, and plants such as *Isolepis basilaris*, *Crassula* sp., and *Carmichaelia kirkii*. Southern Alps geckos and McCann’s skinks are also present within the dry riverbeds. Robust grasshopper is specialised to the Mackenzie braided riverbeds, and is a critically endangered species. Shrublands including the endangered *Olearia fimbriata*, covering moraine terrace margins below Tasman Lake provide important habitat for native invertebrates. These braided riverbed ecosystems are of international significance.

The Aoraki EMU covers a diverse range of ecosystems from the high alpine peaks of the Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps east to the drier Liebig Range. The dominant landscape features are permanent snow and ice, rock, unstable bare colluvium, glaciers and glacial lakes. West–east rainfall gradients strongly influence the vegetation patterns. A diverse range of ecosystems and associated plant communities has developed, ranging from glaciated névés, lakes and moraines, to sub-alpine tussock grasslands and herbfields, open river habitats and low mixed forest. The upper alpine ecosystems reflect the dynamic nature of ice and snow avalanches and historical glacial advances and retreats, which have restricted much of the vegetation to sheltered refugia between extensive scree and rock. It includes notably intact ecological sequences and associated plant communities, from the valley floor glacial moraines, outwash surfaces, adjoining alluvial fans and mountain slopes to the alpine tops.

The lateral moraines from the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier are mostly bare rock from glacial retreat, being colonised by various non-vascular and vascular species including *Coprosma* spp., matagouri, mountain wineberry, porcupine shrubs and snow tōtara on long-settled moraine deposits. Small tarns and ephemeral wetlands (kettleholes) are distinctive rare ecosystems present within the moraines, but being young, they have yet to develop extensive turf plant communities.

The upper slopes of the Malte Brun Range support snow tussock grasslands, sub-alpine shrublands, and a very high diversity of associated native herbs and grasses. Scree and rock bluffs are common, supporting specialist plant species. At higher altitudes, above 1850 m, plant life is restricted to mosses, lichens and the hardiest vascular plants such as the alpine buttercups.
Cultural values

Haupapa Place has immense cultural significance to Kāi Tahu – as does the whole Park. Haupapa Place has many landforms that link to Kāi Tahu whakapapa, and when seen in conjunction with the wider landscape, provide Kāi Tahu whānui with a physical and visual link to their histories and creation stories. By being able to see, visit and experience these geographic features and landscapes, these histories and their associated values can be shared to the next generation and experienced in a close and genuine way.

This part of the Park is also home to mahika kai species such as tikumu, taramea and a variety of native birds. These mahika kai species are still of value to Kāi Tahu whānui today for many cultural purposes such as weaving and other creative pursuits, the creation of tools and other resources. Some of these species also have spiritual significance. Mahika kai in itself is also a cornerstone of Kāi Tahu culture, and the ability to engage in mahika kai activities is a key way of passing on mātauraka Kāi Tahu to the next generation.

Historic values

Haupapa Place includes two actively-conserved historic sites, the old Ball Hut Road and pack track and the first Ball Hut site. The old Ball Hut site sits right on the boundary of the tōpuni in Aroarokaehe Place but the old Ball Hut Road and pack track are within this Place. The road to the Ball Hut site was started in 1915 and the last sections were completed by special work gangs during the Depression, finally reaching Ball Hut in 1930.

The road was built on unstable moraine, subject to frequent slips, washouts, rockfalls and avalanches, and was left unrepaird after a storm in May 1978 caused major damage. It is no longer maintained for vehicle use beyond Husky Flat, and the continuation on to Ball Hut is now a walking track.

Recreational values

Haupapa Place encompasses the most extensive areas of mountain glaciers and high alpine environments within the Park. It also provides the greatest diversity of recreational experiences, ranging from front country short walks associated with the Tasman Glacier Walks Icon destination, cycling the A2O trail, boating on the Tasman Lake, backcountry walking and four-wheel drive opportunities along the Ball Hut track as far as Husky Flat, to backcountry and remote opportunities for alpine activities such as scenic flights and landings, climbing, mountaineering, recreational hunting, ski touring and a range of guided opportunities including glacier guiding, heli-hiking and heli-skiing.

The Department manages three backcountry huts in this Place: Ball Hut (also called Ball Shelter), Tasman Saddle Hut and Kelman Hut. Tasman Saddle and Kelman huts give access to prime high alpine glaciated ski touring areas within this Place, including Haupapa/Tasman Glacier, Hochsetter Shoulder and Darwin Bowls below Mount Alymer, as well as access across to the Murchison Glacier.

Concessionaires provide both powered and non-powered guided boating trips on Tasman Lake. Recreational non-powered boating can also occur on the lake provided the watercraft are personally carried to the lake site.

Aircraft activity is, and always has been, high within the Haupapa Place, particularly with the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport being located within the adjacent Nohoaka Place. Aircraft are increasingly used for scenic landings, and to enable people to take part in a range of alpine activities including heli-skiing, heli-hiking and climbing. As foot access to the backcountry becomes more limited due to glacial retreat and moraine instability, aircraft have become the only means of access to some mountain huts.
2.3.2 Management considerations

The ongoing and future impacts of climate change within Haupapa Place are likely to be increasingly felt in managing natural values and recreation opportunities.

**Natural values**

Increasing temperatures and retreat of the glaciers may provide new opportunities for invasion by weed and pest species, and increases in the spread of a number of key predators. Options for establishing landscape-scale pest control programmes will improve the ability to manage the movement of pest species at the catchment scale, and to co-ordinate control efforts across multiple catchments and lands adjacent to the Park. Developing partnerships with iwi, external agencies, philanthropic groups and community organisations will be important to deliver effective and comprehensive control across such large areas. Key species for landscape-scale control will include tahr, stoats, cats, and weed species transported by wind and water, or brought into the Park by visitors.

A priority for pest control in this Place will be the protection of the internationally significant braided river habitats in the Tasman River. These habitats support animals and plants that are highly vulnerable to changes in water flows and invasions by new pest species induced by climate change. Integrated management of pests along the length of the Tasman River both within this Place and downstream from the Park will provide for the integrity of the entire braided river system.

Tahr are at fairly low levels within this Place and the priority for their management will be to reduce and maintain their population to zero density as required by the Himalayan Tahr Control Plan.

**Recreational values**

The rapid retreat of the Tasman Glacier has caused the destabilisation and slumping of the moraine walls resulting in more limited access to and from the glacier to the surrounding lands. This has meant some popular trips, such as from Ball Hut out onto the ice of the Tasman Glacier, are no longer possible. Planning for new tracks or facilities will need to be made in the context of a much longer-term view on the likely effects of ongoing climate warming.

Climate change has also led to increased crevassing and breaking up of the glacier surface, particularly during the summer season. Creating one large landing zone within this Place will enable aircraft operators to manage their landings more safely and adjust to the changing glacier conditions through the seasons and over the life of this Plan.

Because most aircraft activity in the Park is concentrated within Haupapa Place, the Department needs to ensure that visitors are aware they are likely to see and hear aircraft on a regular basis in this Place, particularly within the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier Landing Zone. The use of tracking devices on aircraft will allow the Department to determine the effect of changing numbers of aircraft and flight paths on the levels of tranquillity experienced on the ground. Visitor monitoring will be used to determine the perceived quality of the visitor experience, particularly for people recreating within the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier Landing Zone and in the lower Tasman valley.
Map 17 Aircraft landing zones - Haupapa Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
As aircraft landing zones allow for greater access to more remote parts of this Place, the issue of waste disposal and its removal from the Park becomes critical for the Department to manage. The disposal of waste and its impact on the environment, and on waters flowing from Aoraki and the associated effects on mahika kai values, are particularly important issues for Kāi Tahu. The Department will work closely with Kāi Tahu to find solutions to minimise waste pollution in this Place, including:

- educating people to pack out their waste, particularly from more remote areas where waste disposal facilities are not available
- including conditions in concessions to ensure concessionaires take responsibility for packing out all waste generated by their activities
- developing bylaws to require the appropriate removal of waste

Easier access into the back country and remote parts of this Place may also result in greater demand and use of existing and new huts, including a new mid-Tasman hut, designed and built by the NZ Alpine Club. Where demand exceeds capacity at high-use times, a booking system should be investigated to manage the expectations of people and to maintain a high quality and safe visitor experience for people using these facilities. Investigating options for a partnership approach to managing huts not owned by the Department will help to share the costs and responsibilities for maintaining the quality and safety of these facilities.

The creation of the Tasman Glacier View Track as a Great Short Walk destination is likely to result in increasing numbers of people visiting the lower front country parts of this Place and concentrating on the small numbers of tracks in the vicinity of the Tasman Lake. Options to manage visitor flow to reduce crowding will be important to sustain a high quality visitor experience at this destination. Some options that could be investigated include:

- creating a one-way loop track to reducing crowding effects
- developing additional tracks around the lake and lake outlet, including a bridge, to provide access into the lower Murchison valley
- combining access around and across the lake to provide a more diverse experience
- encouraging people to visit the Park outside the peak summer season, and to walk the busier tracks around the Tasman Lake at the quieter times of the day

**Engagement values**

This Place is intimately linked to areas adjacent to the Park by SH80, which provides the main entrance into the Park. The proximity of a range of facilities and complementary activities in the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area and beyond creates exciting opportunities for partnerships to be developed to address and provide for future management of vehicle and accommodation facilities as they approach capacity levels within the Park. The Mackenzie/Waitaki Tourism Strategy being established will investigate opportunities for aligning agencies and opportunities across the Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area to provide for a comprehensive visitor experience to the wider area, including the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, that will maximise the quality and diversity of visitor opportunities available.
2.3.3 Haupapa Place – Outcomes, policies and milestones

Outcomes

Visitors entering the Park recognise and respect the mana of this Place and its outstanding values as a national park and a World Heritage Area.

Natural values

Haupapa Place showcases outstanding examples of New Zealand’s glacial, braided riverbed and terrestrial ecosystem and the natural processes and effects of climate change at work in a mountain environment. These processes are readily visible and interpreted to visitors using State Highway 80, Park roads and tracks, and people undertaking recreational activities within the Place.

The extensive braided river habitats of the Tasman River within the Park are flourishing through proactive management of river flows and natural ecological succession processes and protection from the impacts of recreational activities and facility development.

Options to protect the outstanding natural values of the extended Tasman River braided river system beyond the Park boundary down to Lake Pukaki have been investigated and are being implemented to enable more effective and integrated management of these ecosystems.

Threatened species are thriving and are protected as far as possible from the impacts of introduced species. Landscape-scale pest control programmes have resulted in significant reductions in the numbers of pests and ongoing incursions of new pests. Some areas are being maintained free of predators and pest species. Tahr are being managed to zero density, consistent with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan.

Recreational values

Visitors to Haupapa Place can access and experience a range of premium mountain recreation opportunities in a dramatic natural environment. Proactive management such as good facility development and design, and visitor flow management and control, ensures that increasing visitor numbers have not affected the quality of visitor experiences.

The Tasman Glacier Walks Icon destination provides excellent interpretive information to appreciate the natural, historic and cultural values of the Park. A well-designed and maintained system of walking tracks, sympathetic to the topography and ecology of the area, traverses the lower Tasman Lake and provides for an uncrowded experience of the immediate moraine landscape and wider views both up-valley to Aoraki/Mount Cook and down-valley towards Lake Pukaki. Noise and activity associated with boating on the Tasman Lake does not distract from the overall experience of an uncrowded lake in an awe-inspiring wider alpine environment. A bridge across the Tasman Lake outlet enables access to the lower Murchison valley.

Commercial boating on Lake Tasman is well controlled and managed with all structures and ancillary features designed to blend into the largely bare-rock moraine landscape setting. Visitors have a safe and awe-inspiring experience of the glacial lake in its wider alpine environment and of the dynamic glacial processes at work.
Outcomes continued

Vehicle access along the Tasman Valley Road is managed as part of the national park experience, rather than just a route to an end-destination. A cycle track provides for non-powered vehicle access to Blue Lakes carpark, safely separated from the road. The Blue Lakes carpark and associated rest area are managed to avoid impacts on the surrounding indigenous shrubland ecosystems and cultural values of the area.

4WD vehicle access to Husky Flat is maintained until no longer viable due to natural processes. The track continues to provide foot access as far as Ball Hut. Camping next to Ball Hut has minimal impact on the environment.

Backcountry facilities, including a network of tracks and huts, continue to enable visitors with the required backcountry skills and fitness to access and experience more remote areas of the Park for climbing, mountaineering and backcountry skiing, both independently and through guided activities. A booking system for the huts ensures that all types of recreationists have access to use these facilities. Improved aircraft access and a new hut near the mid Haupapa/Tasman Glacier provide for a diverse range of recreation activities to continue safely on the glacier.

Aircraft activity within Haupapa Place is high, particularly in the middle of the day, and visitors can expect to see and hear aircraft when undertaking activities on the ground. The combination of aircraft activity with watercraft activity on Tasman Lake and motor vehicles on Tasman Valley Road means that the tranquillity levels throughout much of this Place will be low.

Guided activities encourage increased appreciation of the spectacular scenery and natural values, and the status of the Park as part of a World Heritage Area. They are consistent with the safe enjoyment of the Place’s outstanding scenic character of the area, while protecting the experience of other users.

Waste management

All visitors dispose of rubbish and human waste responsibly, and pack out where waste receptacles are not provided.

Policies

Recreation

1. Provide for new or redeveloped walking facilities within the Tasman Glacier Walks Icon destination where they will contribute to the diversity of high quality walking experiences available, and provide for safe and effective management of overcrowding on existing tracks.

Guiding

2. Should grant concessions for guiding in the Haupapa/Tasman Glacier landing zone and Lower Haupapa/Tasman Glacier landing zone only in accordance with the following:
   a) the activity is consistent with the visitor management zones shown on Map 4 and as described in Appendix 2;
   b) the requirements of policies for associated activities (such as use of vehicles and aircraft) are met;
   c) all waste is is packed out of the Park or responsibly disposed of in waste disposal receptacles; and
   d) no more than five parties per concessionaire are on the ground at one time in any one landing zone.
Policies continued

Watercraft
3. Should grant concessions for guided non-powered watercraft on Tasman Lake only in accordance with 1.3.16 policies 1–4, and the following:
   a) no more than five non-powered watercraft per guided group; and
   b) no more than two guided groups per concessionaire on the lake at any one time.
4. Should grant concessions for powered watercraft used as a support vessel for guided non-powered watercraft concession activity on Tasman Lake only, provided there is no more than one powered watercraft for each guiding concession.
5. Should grant no more than two concessions for guided powered watercraft on Tasman Lake only, and in accordance with the following:
   a) no more than 15 passengers per powered watercraft;
   b) no more than four powered watercraft per concessionaire are on the lake at any one time; and
   c) powered watercraft operate quietly and at less than 20 knots.

Camping
6. Provide for camping next to Ball Hut and manage other camping in accordance with 1.3.1 Policy 18.

Aircraft
7. Should grant concessions for commercial aircraft landings in Haupapa Place, using an allocation process, only within the following landing zones, as shown on Map 17, and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
   a) Lendenfeld Saddle Landing Zone – no more than six landings per day;
   b) Haupapa Place Landing Zone
      i) no more than 200 landings per day; and
      ii) aircraft to shut down on landing if the pilot leaves the aircraft, within the Upper Neve area, as shown on Map 17; and
   c) Tasman Lake Landing Zone – no more than six landings per day, between 10am and 4pm only.
8. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings to enable heli-skiing in the Upper Haupapa/Tasman Heli-ski Landing Zone and the Haupapa/Tasman Heli-ski Landing Zone only, and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
   a) one concessionaire per landing zone; and
   b) unlimited landings per landing zone per day.
9. Should not grant concessions for non-commercial powered aircraft landings in Haupapa Place.

Vehicle use
10. Should allow concessionaire vehicle use on Tasman Lake Track only in accordance with the following conditions:
    a) the vehicle is limited to one 4WD motor bike and trailer;
    b) passengers are not transported;
    c) the vehicle does not operate between the hours of 5pm and 9am, except in an emergency;
    d) the vehicle is stored overnight in Aoraki/Mount Cook Village;
    e) no more than two trips each way per day are undertaken by each concessionaire; and
    f) the vehicle speed does not exceed 10 km/h.
## Policies continued

11. Maintain the 4WD track in the Tasman River valley from Blue Lakes carpark to Husky Flat as a four-wheel drive road until this is no longer viable due to natural processes.

### Bylaws

12. Should seek amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 to provide for:
   a) camping next to Ball Hut.

## Milestones

### Recreation values

1. Monitored the use of existing walking facilities within the Tasman Glacier Walks Icon destination, and made recommendations on the need for new or redeveloped facilities to cater for visitor numbers (Year 3).

2. Investigated the feasibility of establishing walking access around the Tasman lake outlet and made recommendations (Year 3).

3. Reported on any recommendation for the establishment of any new walking facility within the Tasman Glacier Walks Icon destination and established a proposal for development (Year 5).

4. Implemented any recommendation for establishing walking access around the Tasman Lake outlet (Year 8).
2.4 Pae Tata Place

*(includes the Murchison valley)*

The name ‘Pae Tata’ is taken from the whakataukī, ‘Ko te pae tawhiti whāia kia tata, Ko te pae tata whakamaua kia tīna’ and speaks of the ‘pae tata’ as the goals or achievements that are in close reach, or have already been achieved. This is in contrast to the ‘pae tawhiti’ which are goals or aspirations still far off in the distance. Pae Tata Place covers the Murchison valley which, whilst being more challenging to access than the Tasman and Hooker valleys, is still a place that adventurous visitors engage with regularly.

2.4.1 Description and values

Extending from the upper slopes of the Malte Brun Range on the western side to the Liebig Range ridgeline on the east, the Pae Tata Place takes in the complete Murchison River and glacial valley from its confluence with the Tasman to the head of the catchment in Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps. This Place traverses extreme ranges of both altitude and climatic regimes, extending from the high alpine névés along the Main Divide to the montane grasslands and forests around the outlet of Lake Tasman, and from the moist Malte Brun Range in the west across to the dry Liebig Range in the east (see Map 18).
Map 18 Pae Tata Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
Natural values
The entire Pae Tata Place sits within the Aoraki ecosystem management unit (EMU). The upper Murchison valley contains intact sequences of glacial ecosystems, including glacial moraines, névés, glaciers and glacial lakes. The lower Murchison valley grades from alpine and sub-alpine scrub to lower montane mixed forest and open river habitats, important habitat for a number of threatened species including kea, pīwauwau/rock wren, the alpine buttercup *Ranunculus godleyanus*, and *Olearia fimbriata*.

Both Southern Alps geckos and McCann’s skinks will be present in the dry riverbed, rocky outcrops and scree up to around 1800 m. Grasshopper *Brachaspis nivalis* is found on barren rocky moraine, scree and riverbed surfaces. Black Mountain Cicada (*Maoricicada* spp.) thrive in this area and are a significant part of the soundscape in the Murchison valley. On snow grass, there are the grasshopper *Sigaus australis*, tussock ringlet *Argyrophenogantipodum* and higher up on scree the Black Mountain Ringlet *Percnodaimon merula*.

This Place includes some of the most extensive areas of sub-alpine and montane grasslands in the Park, dominated by snow tussock species and sub-alpine *Poa* species, and interspersed with herbfields including *Celmisia* and *Olearia* alpine and sub-alpine daisy species.

This Place also has high numbers of pest species, including Himalayan tahr. Tahr continue to gain access from lands adjacent to the eastern Park boundary and have bred successfully in the Park to reach a population level where they are having adverse impacts on the indigenous habitats in this Place through browsing and trampling. The Himalayan Thar Control Plan sets a target density of zero for tahr numbers within the Park, with intervention required to keep densities below one animal per sq. km throughout the whole Park. The Wild Animal Control Act 1977 enables aircraft to land anywhere in the Park for wild animal control purposes, subject to requiring a concession (see 1.3.17).

Cultural values
Pae Tata is part of the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area, and therefore has great cultural significance to Kāi Tahu. When seen conjunction with the wider landscape, the landforms and waterways within Pae Tata Place provide Kāi Tahu whānui with a physical and visual link to their histories and creation stories. By being able to see, visit and experience these geographic features and landscapes, these histories and their associated values can be shared to the next generation and experienced in a close and genuine way.

This part of the Park is also home to mahika kai species such as tikumu, taramea and a variety of native birds. These mahika kai species are still of value to Kāi Tahu whānui today for many cultural purposes such as weaving and other creative pursuits, the creation of tools and other resources. Some of these species also have spiritual significance. Mahika kai in itself is also a cornerstone of Kāi Tahu culture, and the ability to engage in mahika kai activities is a key way of passing on mātauraka Kāi Tahu to the next generation.

Historic values
There are no specific historic sites recorded within this Place.
Recreational values

The Place has been managed as a semi-remote alpine location in the past, with limited access opportunities provided for recreation. A current heli-ski zone across most of this Place enables aircraft access for heli-skiing activities along the Liebig and Malte Brun Ranges, while aircraft landing in the upper Murchison Glacier has been increased to a landing zone that extends from the upper névé down to the lower limit of white ice. A landing site at Liebig Hut, previously only available for access by recreational and commercial hunting parties to support the control of Himalayan tahr, is now proposed to be available for other people to use the Liebig Hut as a base for recreational activities, together with new landing sites around the Onslow Hut and Liebig Dome area. Aircraft also often land just outside the Park at Leibig Dome for sightseeing and access into the Park (see Map 19).

Aircraft provide access to the Murchison Glacier, the Liebig Range, and the Liebig and Onslow huts for a variety of recreational activities including sightseeing, hunting and climbing. Heli-skiing also occurs on the Malte Brun and Liebig ranges within this Place. While aircraft activity has been low in this Place, visitors can expect to experience aircraft noise in the lower Murchison valley due to the overflow of noise from aircraft activity in the Tasman valley and also due in part to aircraft flying across the Murchison valley from Liebig Dome.

Other access has been by foot from the glacial basins on the western side of the Place along the Malte Brun Range, and from the Jollie, Cass and Gorilla Stream river valleys on the eastern boundary of the Park. There are no maintained walking tracks within this Place.

Three backcountry huts are located within this Place – the Department-owned Liebig Hut and two huts owned and managed by recreational groups. The Onslow Hut, owned by the NZ Deerstalkers’ Association (NZDA), sits in the lower Murchison valley while the Murchison Hut, owned by the NZ Alpine Club (NZAC) is in the upper glacial part of the valley. The long-term future of the Murchison Hut at its present site is undecided as it is currently closed due to increasing instability issues at the site. Public and club members have equal access to each of these huts, with hut fees going to the clubs as per a management agreement with the Department.

Opportunities exist for greater use of this Place for recreational activities without losing the sense of semi-remoteness. Providing for aircraft landings in the upper glacial basin will create safer access to the high alpine parts of the Place for climbing, skiing and hiking activities as foot access becomes increasingly difficult. Allowing current aircraft access to Liebig Hut to be available for a range of recreational activities, in addition to hunting, will provide greater recreational opportunities in the middle and lower parts of this Place.

Access over the Tasman River below the Tasman Lake outlet would open up some parts of the lower Murchison and Tasman valleys for recreational activities without affecting the sense of high tranquillity and remoteness. Access to the main Murchison valley could be achieved with further access routes provided to the Murchison riverbed.
Map 19 Aircraft landing zones - Pae Tata Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook

Landing zones
Aircraft access zones
Red zone
Orange zone
100 m radius around landing site
2.4.2 Management considerations

Natural values
A key challenge within Pae Tata Place will be to manage more effectively the key threats to indigenous biodiversity from pests and increasing visitor use, which include the following.

- The Murchison valley provides a potential corridor for movement of both animal and plant pests into the Tasman riverbed as it joins the Tasman River just below the Tasman Lake outlet.
- The vast length of the Liebig Range provides extensive opportunities for new incursions of pest species into the Park from adjacent lands.
- Increasing recreational use can result in impacts on sensitive areas, creation of informal and high use of existing tracks and facilities, waste disposal issues and other threats such as fire and pest plant introductions.

Landscape-scale pest control programmes for tahr and other pest animals will provide the most effective means of managing such a long-exposed boundary to the Park and maintaining effective control of potential incursions. The Himalayan Thar Control Plan requires constant vigilance to meet the zero-density target for tahr within the Park. Red deer are already present in low numbers in the Park, while other potential pest incursions include fallow deer and wapiti, wallaby and pigs.

Recreational values
The aircraft landing zones have been expanded to allow for future changes on the Murchison Glacier and to integrate management of landings occurring along the Liebig Range. Key issues for the Department to address as a result of any change in aircraft traffic will include:

- maintaining a safe environment for aircraft to operate.
- retaining high tranquillity levels over significant parts of this Place.
- managing potential conflicts between hunting and non-hunting recreationists accessing the Leibig Hut area. This may include managing activities according to seasonal variations in demand, and establishing a booking system for the hut at times of high demand.
- investigating options to re-establish a hut in the upper Murchison Glacier area.
- establishing a surveillance programme to manage the likelihood of inadvertent introduction of new pest species with increasing visitor numbers, and the potential impact of this on Park values.

Waste management
Increasing numbers of visitors will result in increasing issues for waste disposal, particularly in a semi-remote area. The Department will work closely with kaitiaki rūnaka, concessionaires and recreation groups to encourage the responsible management of all waste, including requiring people to pack out their waste where no waste receptacles are available.
2.4.3 Pae Tata Place – Outcomes, policies and milestones

Outcomes

Natural values
The extensive sub-alpine and montane grassland ecosystems are protected from the impacts of introduced species and human activities.

Tahr populations are being controlled throughout this Place to comply with the Himalayan Thar Control Plan. Any new incursions are being quickly and effectively removed. All other wild animals are controlled to zero density. Recreational and commercial hunters contribute effectively to the reduction and control of wild animal populations, with Departmental control operations as required.

Recreational values
Increased access, including new foot access around the Tasman Lake outlet, has encouraged increased visitor use of this Place while still retaining its backcountry character. Pae Tata Place continues to be part of the Park that is experienced by those who desire, and have the skills for, a backcountry experience.

Opportunities exist for a range of day and overnight activities where visitors can undertake more challenging experiences such as hunting, climbing and backcountry skiing. A range of facilities, including backcountry huts, are maintained to foster and encourage such use. The Murchison Hut has been re-established in a safe location to provide accommodation for overnight use of the upper glacier area.

Guided activities encourage increased appreciation of the spectacular scenery and natural values, and enjoyment of the area while also protecting the experience of other users.

Visitors experience high tranquillity in the majority of Pae Tata Place, with medium tranquillity between the Liebig Dome Landing Zone and the lower Haupapa/Tasman Glacier valley.

There is no commercial boating on lakes within this Place, and other commercial use does not adversely affect other non-commercial activities that occur.

Waste management
All visitors dispose of rubbish and human waste responsibly and pack out where waste receptacles are not provided.

Policies

Guiding

1. Should grant concessions for alpine guiding in the Murchison Glacier and the Liebig Hut Landing Zone only in accordance with 1.3.10 Policy 1, and the following criteria:
   a) no more than two parties are on the ground at one time within the Remote zone; and
   b) no more than 40 clients per day per concessionaire are guided within the Remote zone.
Policies continued

2. Should grant concessions for guiding in the Liebig Landing Zone only in accordance with 1.3.10 Policy 1, and the following criteria:
   a) no more than two parties are on the ground at one time within the Remote zone; and
   b) no more than 40 clients per day per concessionaire are guided within the Remote zone.

Aircraft

3. Should grant concessions for commercial aircraft landings in Pae Tata Place, using an allocation process, only within the following landing zones as shown on Map 19, and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
   a) Murchison Glacier Landing Zone –
      i) no more than 35 landings per day; and
      ii) aircraft to shut down on landing if the pilot leaves the aircraft;
   b) Onslow Hut and Liebig Hut landing zones – no more than six landings per day per hut, between 8am and 6pm only; and
   c) Liebig Dome Landing Zone –
      i) no more than 20 landings per day; and
      ii) aircraft to shut down on landing if the pilot leaves the aircraft.

4. Should grant concessions for aircraft landings to enable heli-skiing in the Murchison Heli-ski Landing Zone and the Haupapa/Tasman Heli-ski Landing Zone only, and in accordance with the following limits and criteria:
   a) Murchison Heli-ski Landing Zone – one concessionaire and unlimited landings per day; and
   b) Haupapa/Tasman Heli-ski Landing Zone – as per 2.3.3 Policy 8.

5. Should grant concessions for non-commercial powered aircraft landings in Pae Tata Place only within the Onslow Hut and Liebig Hut landing zones as shown on Map 19, and where no more than 10 landings per year (1 January–31 December) per hut occur.

Huts

6. Manage the Liebig Hut as a bookable facility if the level of use is affecting visitor safety or the quality of visitor experience.

Bylaws

7. After investigation, amend the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981, if required, to provide for the following:
   a) require people to book before staying at Liebig Hut, where increasing demand is exceeding the capacity of the hut, and prohibit people from staying more than two consecutive nights.

Milestones

Recreation values

1. Monitor usage of Liebig Hut and investigate implementation of a booking system, through an amendment to the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 (Year 3).
2.5 Pae Tawhiti

*(includes the upper Godley River and catchment)*

The name ‘Pae Tawhiti’ is taken from the whakatauki, ‘Ko te pae tawhiti whāia kia tata, Ko te pae tata whakamaua kia tīna’ and speaks of the ‘pae tawhiti’ as goals or aspirations still far off in the distance, or long term. This is in contrast to the ‘pae tata’ which the goals or achievements that are in close reach, or have already been achieved. Pae Tawhiti Place covers the Godley valley which is the most remote part of the Park to access, and therefore a goal far off on the horizon (both figuratively and literally) for visitors to the Park.

2.5.1 Description and values

Geographically separated from the rest of the Park for foot access, the main access to this Place is four-wheel drive access from Tekapo up the Godley River valley. The whole of the upper Godley catchment above the main riverbed is contained within this Place (see Map 20).
Natural values
While geographically separated from the main areas of the Park for human access, this Place is part of the same mountainous continuum for the indigenous fauna. Alpine areas in this Place provide important habitat for threatened bird species such as kea and rock wren. Scree, rock outcrops and dry riverbeds are also home to the Southern Alps gecko and McCann’s skink. The threatened kākā inhabit the montane forested areas of the catchment.

The Godley River is identified as a priority ecosystem unit (PEU) from its beginning at Lake Tekapo to the upper braided riverbed within the Park. Key values include braided river habitat, kakī breeding and release sites in lower reaches, and threatened braided river bird species habitat protection. The Project River Recovery programme objective is, to maintain a weed-free riverbed for nesting birds through the provision of extensive weed control programmes; to maintain and restore braided riverbed species and communities; and to maintain a kakī release and breeding site in lower reaches. Threatened species include oystercatcher, *Galaxias prognathus “waitaki”*, wrybill, banded dotterel and black-fronted terns. The Godley valley contains most of the limited amount of flat land found within the Park.

Cultural values
Pae Tawhiti is part of the wider Te Manahuna/Mackenzie area, and therefore has great cultural significance to Kāi Tahu whānui. When seen conjunction with the wider landscape, the landforms and waterways within Pae Tawhiti Place provide Kāi Tahu whānui with a physical and visual link to their histories and creation stories. By being able to see, visit and experience these geographic features and landscapes, these histories and their associated values can be shared to the next generation and experienced in a close and genuine way.

This part of the Park is also home to mahika kai species such as tikumu, taramea and a variety of native birds. These mahika kai species are still of value to Kāi Tahu whānui today for many cultural purposes such as weaving and other creative pursuits, the creation of tools and other resources. Some of these species also have spiritual significance. Mahika kai in itself is also a cornerstone of Kāi Tahu culture, and the ability to engage in mahika kai activities is a key way of passing on mātauraka Kāi Tahu to the next generation.

Historic values
There are no historic sites recorded in this Place.

Recreational values
This Place is managed predominantly as remote area, with a confined area of backcountry zone around the lower Godley riverbed from the Park boundary to Separation Stream to reflect vehicle access and hut use. It provides multiple experiences for recreation in a remote alpine environment, including tramping, skiing and hunting.

No aircraft landings occur within this Place.

Three backcountry huts are located in this Place – Red Stag Hut (owned by the NZ Deerstalkers’ Association (NZDA), on the Park boundary), Eade Memorial Hut (NZDA owned) and Godley Hut (owned by the NZ Alpine Club). 4WD access is provided to the Red Stag Hut and the Eade Memorial Hut.

Recreational hunting is very popular in this valley given the ease of 4WD access. Commercial hunting (i.e. tahr carcass and hunting guides) is less popular although it still occurs, and the Godley catchment is viewed as a critical location for these business opportunities.
Map 21 Aircraft landing zones - Pae Tawhiti Place

National Park Management Plan
Aoraki/Mount Cook
2.5.2 Management considerations

Natural values
A key challenge for this Place will be to control ongoing incursions of pests, particularly tahr, from accessing the Park along the extensive borders. The Godley River valley provides a potential corridor for pest movement into the Park, both by pests moving from adjacent lands, and by people entering the Park along the unformed legal road and 4WD routes.

Tahr are present in high numbers in this area and pose an issue for control without aircraft access for hunters.

4WD access is only allowed as far as Separation Stream, however there are ongoing issues for vehicles travelling further into the Park and impacting on the indigenous values of the area.

Recreational values
Despite no aircraft landings within this Place, ensuring overflights don’t adversely affect natural quiet remains an ongoing advocacy issue.

Hunting continues to be a key recreational activity in this Place and the huts are popular for ground-based hunting groups wanting to access the Godley valley.

2.5.3 Pae Tawhiti Place: Outcomes, policies and milestones

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Natural values</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Pae Tawhiti Place remains a natural, uncluttered environment with a low degree of development, where visitors can expect to experience natural quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The extensive braided river habitats of the Godley River are protected and maintained as a significant ecosystem. Threatened species are thriving and are protected as far as possible from the impacts of introduced species and human activities. There are areas kept free of predators and pest plants. Established biodiversity management and monitoring programmes contribute to national initiatives and benefit braided river specialist species and communities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahr and other wild animals are controlled to zero density through recreational, guided and commercial hunting with official control as required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recreational values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Place offers a range of challenging backcountry and remote visitor experiences. Vehicle access is allowed only as far as Separation Stream to encourage visitors to experience nature on its own terms. Visitors are able to use and enjoy the three huts located within this Place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There is no commercial boating on lakes within this Place, and other commercial use does not adversely affect other non-commercial activities that occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tranquillity in Pae Tawhiti Place is very high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All visitors dispose of rubbish and human waste responsibly, and pack out where waste receptacles are not provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Policies

### Guiding

1. Should grant concessions for alpine guiding only in accordance with 1.3.10 Policy 1, and the following criteria:
   a) No more than one guided group per day per concessionaire.

### Watercraft

2. Should not grant concessions for commercial boating on any lakes within Pae Tawhiti Place.

### Vehicle use

3. Should not maintain or allow for vehicle access beyond Separation Stream.

### Aircraft

4. Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings within Pae Tawhiti Place, other than in accordance with Red Zone policy. See 1.3.3 Policy 5.

## Milestones

See whole-of-Park milestones in section 1.3.18.
Part Three: Aoraki Whakaoka Raki

Great leaders are characterised by their ability to pursue excellence and reach goals once thought to be out of reach – both individually, and as part of the group that they inspire and support. This can be seen through Aoraki in the way he reaches higher than every other peak in New Zealand, piercing the sky itself – hence the whakataukī ‘Aoraki Whakaoka Raki’ (Aoraki the sky piercer).

This section contains the reporting mechanisms and milestones allowing the Department, alongside kaitiaki rūnaka, the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and the New Zealand Conservation Authority to assess if they are meeting the goals set out in this Plan, and striving for excellence in the example of Aoraki.
Part Three: Implementation, monitoring, reporting and milestones

The Department uses many different tools to implement national park management plans, including:

- business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for departmental activities
- advocacy for national park values
- working alongside kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu
- working alongside Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board
- working with others
- decisions on concessions and other authorisations

Monitoring and reporting, using the milestones in this Plan, help determine the success of its provisions. The Department reports regularly to the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on implementing this Plan, and reports annually to them on progress in achieving the milestones. The Conservation Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Additional monitoring may be identified in the Department’s Statement of Intent and annual reports.

This Plan has effect from the time of approval by the New Zealand Conservation Authority until it is formally amended or reviewed in full or in part.

Amendments or partial reviews of this Plan may occur during its life, where necessitated by changing circumstances or increased knowledge, following the consultation processes set out in the National Parks Act 1980. Minor amendments may be made to the electronic version of this Plan with the approval of the New Zealand Conservation Authority where these do not materially affect the objectives or policies of this Plan or the public interest in the area concerned. Amendments necessitated by changes to legislation may also be made.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Report annually to the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, the kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on progress in achieving the milestones in this Plan, as a means of monitoring its implementation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Report, at least annually, to the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board on changes, additions, and updates to content, information and supporting links for this Plan on the Department’s website.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Seek the agreement of the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu when the Department considers an amendment or partial review of the Plan is necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Seek the approval of the New Zealand Conservation Authority, on the recommendation of the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, for any amendments to this Plan to correct a factual error, reflect changes in legislation, update information about Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, or provide clarification of a policy without altering its intent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Amend the electronic version of this Plan on the Department’s website within one month of any amendment or partial review being approved and promote use of the electronic version of this Plan by all users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Amend the existing bylaws for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park within three years of the approval of this Plan.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Milestones

1. Produced annual public reports on the effectiveness of the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan meeting the principles of the National Parks Act 1980 and General Policy for National Parks 2005, including, but not limited to: climate change, effects of authorisations, tourism and changing user trends, changes in pest control, and other technologies used in Park management (Year 3).

2. Investigated the rationalisation of existing Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park boundaries and addition of other areas with national park values, and initiated reclassification where necessary (Year 3).

3. Implemented the recommendations of the investigation into the rationalisation of existing Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park boundaries and other areas with national park values, if required (Year 5).

4. Reported annually to the Board, the kaitiaki rūnaka and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu on progress in meeting the milestones set out through the Plan (Year 10).

See also the following sections of this Plan for milestones:

- 1.2.1 Natural heritage;
- 1.2.2 Historic and cultural heritage;
- 1.2.3 Recreational values;
- 1.2.4 Engagement values;
- 2.1 Nohoaka Place
- 2.2 Aroarokaeha Place;
- 2.3 Haupapa Place;
- 2.4 Pae Tata Place; and
- 2.5 Pae Tawhiti Place.
Any definitions from legislation or General Policy are referenced in grey below and not repeated in full. All Acts are online at www.legislation.govt.nz.

**Actively conserved historic place**
Historically significant site managed by the Department to preserve and maintain its historic features.

**Activity** (National Parks Act 1980: section 2)

**Aerially-assisted trophy hunting**
A wild animal recovery operation activity authorised under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (whether or not for hire or reward) where an aircraft is used for the following purposes, even if one or more of them is not actually achieved, and no other:

a) to carry recreational hunter(s), their guide(s), associated firearms and ammunition;

b) to actively search for wild animals with trophy potential;

c) on-the-ground guiding of the client and killing of the wild animals; and

d) recovery of such wild animals.

This activity excludes the:

i live capture and carriage of wild animals;

ii killing of any deer species during the period 23 March to 9 April and, when it falls outside this period, the four days of Easter;

iii killing and recovery of wild animals or any part thereof for supply to a New Zealand Food Safety Authority-approved processing facility; and

iv carriage or use of a shotgun.

**Ahi Kā**
Representation of continuous occupation, the idea of mana whenua being continually present on their land.

**Aircraft**
Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth (Civil Aviation Act 1990: section 2). This includes, but is not limited to, the following types of aircraft: powered and non-powered; recreational and commercial; fixed-wing and rotary-wing; manned aircraft and remotely piloted aircraft; and any other aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

See also **Aircraft, non-powered** and **Aircraft, remotely piloted (drones)**.

**Aircraft, control line model**
A model aircraft primarily controlled in flight by a single or multiple wire system operated by the person flying the aircraft and restricted to circular flights about a central point.
**Aircraft, free flight model**
A model aircraft with a maximum wing loading of 62 g/dm² (20 oz/ft²), with a flight path that, once launched, is uncontrollable.

**Aircraft, non-powered**
Any machine not driven by a powered device, that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. This is an inclusive definition that includes non-powered gliders, non-powered hang gliders, parachutes, balloons and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.
See also Aircraft.

**Aircraft, remotely piloted (drones)**
An unmanned aircraft piloted from a remote station, excluding a kite. (Or as regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.)

**Airstrip**
Any specified area of public conservation land specifically maintained for the landing and take-off of fixed-wing aircraft, which may also be used by rotary-wing aircraft. It does not include a certified aerodrome as defined by the Conservation Act 1987 or an airport as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966.

**Allocation process**
The granting of all, or a proportion of, the total amount of a concession activity in a limited supply situation, in accordance with section 17ZG(2)(a) of the Conservation Act 1987. The process may be by auction, tender, expression of interest, request for proposals, or other actions that may encourage specific applications.

**Alpine guiding**
Guided activities occurring in the alpine environment, involving day or multi day trips, including but not limited to mountaineering, climbing, ski-touring and instructional courses (e.g. for mountain craft), and excluding glacier day walking and heli-skiing.

**Animal** *(National Parks Act 1980: section 2)*

**Archaeological site** *(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)*

**At risk (species)**
Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the ‘Threatened’ species categories, but are declining (though buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status, or survive only in relictual populations. *(New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual 2008)*.

**Authorisation** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Authorised**
Approved in a statutory process.
**Backcountry destination**
Destination that provides for more challenging adventures, including popular walks and tramps, within the body of a large-scale natural setting.

**Biodiversity** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Biosecurity**
The Department has functions which it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993 (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

**Building** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Bylaw** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Climate change** (Resource Management Act 1991: section 2)

**Climate change effects**
All direct and indirect effects of climate change. This includes:

- a) changes in the climate system (such as temperature change, changes in rainfall patterns, sea-level rise and storm surge, ocean acidification, and changes in ocean currents);
- b) secondary effects such as climate-induced changes to invasive species (the abundance, range and vigour of) and land use (includes facilities);
- c) cumulative effects;
- d) anthropogenic effects exacerbated by climate change (such as pollution, extraction, land-use, and sedimentation); and
- e) the effects of human adaptations and mitigation actions in response to climate change (such as hydro dams, river stopbanks, and sea walls).

**Commercial hunting** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Community**
Any individual or group (whether statutory or non-statutory, formal or informal, commercial or non-commercial) having an interest in a particular conservation issue.

**Concession** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Concessionaire** (National Parks Act 1980: section 2)

**Conservation** (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

**Conservation boards**
Their functions include overseeing the preparation of national park management plans and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Director-General of the Department of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role. The relevant conservation board for this Plan is the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board (General Policy for National Parks 2005).
Conservation General Policy
A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Conservation, Wildlife, Marine Reserves, Reserves, Wild Animal Control and Marine Mammals Protection Acts. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters, and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.

Conservation legislation
A term that applies collectively to the statutes administered by the Department, including the Conservation Act 1987 (and the legislation listed in Schedule 1 of that Act), the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

Conservation management
Any activity carried out by the Minister or the Director-General (and their contractors and authorised agents) in the exercise of his or her functions, duties or powers under conservation legislation.

Conservation management strategy (CMS) (National Parks Act 1980: section 2)

Control line model aircraft
See Aircraft, control line model.

Cultural (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Cultural materials
Includes plants, plant materials and materials derived from animals (including marine mammals and birds), to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, which are important to Kāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

Cumulative effect (Resource Management Act 1991: section 3)

Customary use (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

D

Department, the
The Department of Conservation.

Destination management
A programme aimed at increasing the number of people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences; optimising resources; working with others; and improving marketing and promotion. Destinations are a geographic area and/ or group of facilities that are the focus of a single typical visitor trip, and are categorised into Icon, Gateway, Local Treasure and Backcountry destinations. Destination management is the coordinated management of all the elements that make up a destination including its values, attractions, people, infrastructure, access and how the destination is marketed.
**Director-General**

The Director-General of Conservation.

**Disability assist dog** (Dog Control Act 1996: section 2)

---

**Ecological integrity** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**Ecosystem**

An ‘indigenous ecosystem’ is comprised of indigenous species (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

**Ecosystem services** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Effect** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Electric power-assisted pedal cycle (E-bike)**

A pedal cycle to which is attached one or more auxiliary electric propulsion motors having a combined maximum power output not exceeding 300 watts.

**Emergency (for an aircraft)**

A situation where a concession is not required in accordance with section 17ZF of the Conservation Act 1987 only as a result of:

a) a mechanical or structural or operational defect in the aircraft or its equipment; or

b) weather conditions or other causes not under the control of the pilot in command.

**Encampment** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Endemic** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Eradicate** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Exceptional circumstances**

Circumstances well outside the normal range of circumstances. They do not have to be unique or very rare, but they do need to be truly an exception rather than circumstances regularly or often encountered.

---

**Facilities** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Fish** (Fisheries Act 1996: section 2)

**Fish & Game Council** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Fishery** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Fixed anchor**

A device, such as a bolt or piton, placed permanently into rock to facilitate climbing and caving activities.

**Four-wheel drive road**

A road that can be traversed by a four-wheel drive vehicle capable of handling conditions including grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice without causing adverse effects.
to the adjoining areas or the road. The road, through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures, can be retained at this four-wheel drive standard, and can be shared with other vehicles, including motorbikes and mountain bikes.

See also Road.

**Free flight model aircraft**
See Aircraft, free flight model.

**Freshwater fish** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

---

**G**

**Game** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Game animal** (Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

**Gateway destination**

A destination that helps to introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities and include many traditional camping and tramping destinations.

**General Policy for National Parks**

A policy prepared under section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Act.

---

**H**

**Habitat** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Hang glider**

A glider capable of being launched and landed solely using the pilot’s legs, and includes para-gliders.

**Herd of special interest** (Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

**Historic and cultural heritage** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Historic area** (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

**Historic place** (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

**Historic resource** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Hover**

An aircraft flight at a constant height and position over a surface.

**Hovercraft**

A motorised vessel that derives full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reaction of air against the surface of the land or water over which it operates.

---

**I**

**Icon destination**

A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism, and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand.

**Indigenous species** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)
**Integrated conservation management** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)**

An international, non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value, and dedicated to the conservation of the world’s historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee (www.icomos.org.nz).

**International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pūmanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki I Ngā Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe**

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation, produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles (www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.htm).

**Interpretation**

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest, increased understanding and support for conservation.

**Intrinsic value** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Itinerant pilot**

A pilot who lands their aircraft within the Park but not on a routine basis, such as the pilot of a private, non-commercial aircraft.

---

**Kāi Tahu**

The iwi of Kāi Tahu/Ngāi Tahu, consisting of the collective of individuals who descend from the primary hapū of Waitaha, Kāti Māmoe and Kāi Tahu being: Ngāti Kurī, Ngāti Irakehu, Kāti Huirapa, Ngāi Tuāhuriri and Kāi Te Ruahikihiki.

**Kaitiaki** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Kaitiaki rūnaka**

The papatipu rūnaka having kaitiaki responsibility for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park; being Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua, Te Rūnanga o Waihao, and Te Rūnanga o Moeraki.

**Kaitiakitaka/Kaitiakitanga** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

---

**Limited supply situation or opportunity**

Where a limit has been placed on the total amount of a concession activity provided for within the Park.

**Livestock** *(National Parks Act 1980: section 2)*

**Local authority**

The local authorities relevant to this Plan are Mackenzie District Council, Ashburton District Council, Timaru District Council, Westland District Council, Canterbury Regional Council (Environment Canterbury) and West Coast Regional Council (Local Government Act 2002: section 5(i)).
**Local Treasure destination**
Locally important, vehicle-accessible location that provides recreation opportunities for, and grows connections with, nearby communities.

**Mahika kai**
The practice of sustainably harvesting natural resources. Mahika kai includes the places these activities take place, the transmission of cultural knowledge that occurs, the traditional methods and various tools used, the sustainability and kaitiakitanga considerations, and the physical gathering, preparing, and using of these resources.

**Mana** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Mana whenua**
The tribal grouping that has authority over an area based on ahi kā and whakapapa (traditional possession and occupation of a location). This infers territorial rights and authority over an area by this tribal grouping.

**Mātauraka Kāi Tahu**
The body of traditional knowledge and protocols developed by Kai Tahu ancestors over the course of generations.

**Mauri** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Milestone**
A specific action that is a measurable step towards achieving an objective or outcome.

**Mining** *(Crown Minerals Act 1991: section 2)*

**Motor vehicle (includes motorised vehicle)**
A motor vehicle does not include any electric power-assisted pedal cycle *(Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)*.

Note: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes) taken onto the Park must be registered and/or licensed, where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1998.

**Motorised watercraft**
A vessel or other watercraft that:

a) is used on or in water; and

b) is not powered solely by hand, solely by sail, or solely by a combination of hand and sail.

**Mountain bike**
A non-powered or non-motorised bicycle that can be used off formed roads.

**National park lands and waters** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Native (species)**
Plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings, vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words ‘indigenous’ and ‘native’ have the same meaning in this Plan.
Natural (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Natural character (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Natural quiet
Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature.

Natural resources (Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

Natural state (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Non-powered vehicle
A vehicle propelled solely by human power, and includes a mountain bike.

Non-powered watercraft
A vessel or other watercraft that:
   a) is used on or in water; and
   b) is powered solely by hand, solely by sail, or solely by a combination of hand and sail.

One-off (concession)
A concession for an activity that:
   a) has easily managed minor effects;
   b) complies with the relevant legislation, conservation management strategy and this national park management plan;
   c) has clearly defined limits, such as the number of trips/landings;
   d) does not involve permanent structures;
   e) does not have a duration of more than three months; and
   f) does not take place in the same location more than once in a three-year period.

Outcome (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Overriding considerations (Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

Papatipu Rūnaka
Means the papatipu rūnaka of Kāi Tahu whānui referred to in section 9 of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996.

Para-glider
A hang-glider with no rigid primary structure.

Park, the
Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Participation (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Partnerships (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

Persistence
Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).
**Personal mobility device**
For the purposes of this Plan, this does not include an electric power-assisted pedal cycle (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

**Pest** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Place**
For the purposes of this Plan, the Places are: Nohoaka Place, Aroarokaehe Place, Haupapa Place, Pae Tata Place and Pae Tawhiti Place. (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Plan, the**
Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan.

**Pou whenua** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Preservation** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Priority ecosystem unit**
An ecosystem unit identified through the Department’s natural heritage prioritisation processes as being one of the most effective locations to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems is protected.

**Private accommodation** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Protection** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Protocol(s)** (Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998: section 281)

**Public accommodation** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Public conservation lands and waters**
All lands and waters administered by the Department of Conservation for their respective legislative purpose, including the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources of those areas.

**Rāhui** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Rakatira/Rakatirataka**
A leader, someone of high esteem within the community/ Chieftainship, right to exercise authority, self-determination

**Recreational freshwater fisheries** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**Related facilities**
Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.

**Relict**
Population of a species whose distribution has been severely modified and disturbed with dispersed fragments remaining.

**Remotely piloted aircraft**
See Aircraft, remotely piloted.
**Restoration** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Road**
A road includes any tunnel, bridge, ford, rail, watercraft, viaduct or other feature which forms part of a way that is formed or maintained for vehicle use. A road may or may not pass over a defined legal road (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

See also *Four-wheel drive road*.

**Roar period**
The primary recreational deer hunting period, from 23 March to 9 April (inclusive).

**Rohe** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

---

**Site** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Species** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Sports fish** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Statement of Intent (SOI)**
A document that sets out a rolling four-year direction for the Department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them to assess the performance of government departments.

**Structure** (Resource Management Act 1991: section 2)

---

**Takiwā** (Conservation General Policy 2005)

**Taoka/Taonga** (General Policy for National Parks 2005)

**Taoka species/Taonga species** (Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998: section 287)

**Taonga tūturu** (Protected Objects Act 1975: section 2)

**Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua**
Representative body of a Kāi Tahu papatipu rūnaka, whose takiwā centres on Arowhenua and extends from Rakāia to Waitaki, sharing interests with Ngāi Tūahuriri between Hakatere and Rakāia, and thence inland to Aoraki and the Main Divide.

**Te Rūnanga o Moeraki**
Representative body of a Kāi Tahu papatipu rūnaka, whose takiwā centres on Moeraki and extends from Waitaki to Waihemo and inland to the Main Divide.

**Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu**
The legal Iwi Authority representing the tribal body of Ngāi Tahu whānui established under section 6 of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996.

**Te Rūnanga o Waihao**
Representative body of a Kāi Tahu papatipu rūnaka, whose takiwā centres on Wainono, sharing interests with Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua to Waitaki, and extends inland to Omarama and the Main Divide.
**Threatened (species)**
Includes all species categorised as ‘Nationally Critical’, ‘Nationally Endangered’ or ‘Nationally Vulnerable’ under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

**Tikaka/Tikanga** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Translocation**
Movement by human intervention of a species from place to place, usually with the intention of improving the status of the species.

**Under control (dogs)**

a) Not causing nuisance or danger to:
   i) people, or
   ii) any indigenous fauna; and

b) Able to respond immediately and appropriately to controls including a leash, voice commands, hand signals or whistles.

**Utilities** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Vehicle** *(Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)*

**Visitor**
In this Plan, visitors are people using areas and facilities managed by the Department. They include adults and children from both New Zealand and overseas, and they may either arrange their own visit or use the services of a concessionaire.

**Wāhi tapu** *(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)*

**Wetlands** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*

**Wild animal** *(Wild Animal Control Act 1977: section 2)*

**Wildlife** *(Wildlife Act 1953: section 2)*

**World Heritage Site** *(General Policy for National Parks 2005)*
Appendices

Appendix 1  165
Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 – relating to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Appendix 2  174
Prescriptions for managing visitor management zones in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Appendix 3  176
Taonga species in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Appendix 4  178
Ecosystem units in and adjoining Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Appendix 5  179
List of Geopreservation Sites in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Appendix 6  180
Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area – Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Appendix 7  184
International Status – Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve
Appendix 1

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 – relating to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Protocols on the Department of Conservation’s interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues (Clause 12.12, Deed of Settlement, 1997).

Notification of the issue of Protocols

Under section 282 (4) of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation hereby notifies that she has issued Protocols on behalf of the Crown regarding the Department of Conservation’s interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues, and that the Protocols as set out in the Schedule hereto were issued on 22 October 1998.

Schedule

1 Introduction

1.1 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires that the Act be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

1.2 The Director-General has certain management responsibilities in terms of legislation and can only delegate or share responsibility for decisions s/he makes within the limits of his/her legislation. However, in making such decisions, the Director-General will provide Te Rūnanga the opportunity for input, consistent with section 4, in its policy, planning and decision-making processes on the matters set out in these Protocols.

1.3 These Protocols apply across the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā, which spans five conservancies, and the Southern and Central Regional Offices of the Department.

1.4 Both the Department and Te Rūnanga are seeking a relationship consistent with the Treaty principle of partnership that achieves, over time, the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Rūnanga and the Department, as set out in this document.

2 Purpose of Protocols

2.1 These Protocols are issued pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and clause 12.12 of the 1997 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu, which specifies the following:

2.1.1 Definitions

Protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga, which sets out:

a) how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers, and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area; and

b) how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga and provide for Te Rūnanga’s input into its decision-making process.
2.1.2  Authority to issue, amend or cancel Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Minister of Conservation may, from time to time issue, amend, and cancel Protocols.

2.1.3  Issue of Protocols

On the Settlement Date (as defined in section 8 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998) the Crown has agreed through the Minister of Conservation to issue Protocols in this form on the following matters:

a) cultural materials;
b) freshwater fisheries;
c) culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
d) historic resources;
e) Resource Management Act 1991 involvement; and
f) visitor and public information.

2.1.4  Protocols subject to Crown obligations

Pursuant to section 283 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Protocols are issued and amended, subject to, and without restriction upon:

a) the obligations of the Minister of Conservation and the Department of Conservation to discharge their respective functions, powers, and duties in accordance with existing law and Government policy from time to time; and
b) the Crown’s powers to amend policy, and introduce legislation amending existing law.

This clause is not intended to indicate, and should not be interpreted as indicating, any agreement by Te Rūnanga to any amendment to policy which would adversely affect the redress provided by the Crown pursuant to the Settlement Deed or the ability of either party to fulfil its obligations expressed in the Settlement Deed.

2.1.5  Noting of Protocols on conservation management strategies

Pursuant to section 284 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998:

a) The existence of Protocols, once issued, and as amended from time to time, including a definition of Protocols as set out in section 281 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and a summary of the terms of issue of Protocols, must be noted in conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and national park management plans affecting the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area; and
b) Noting of Protocols pursuant to section 284(1) of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 is for the purpose of public notice only and is not an amendment to the relevant strategies or plans for the purposes of section 17I of the Conservation Act 1987 or section 46 of the National Parks Act 1980.

2.1.6  Enforceability of Protocols

Pursuant to section 285 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998:

a) The Minister of Conservation must comply with a Protocol as long as it remains in force;
b) If the Minister of Conservation fails unreasonably to comply with a Protocol, Te Rūnanga may, subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, enforce the Protocol by way of public law action against the Minister of Conservation;
c) Notwithstanding paragraph (b), damages are not available as a remedy for a failure to comply with a Protocol; and

d) This clause does not apply to any guidelines which are developed pursuant to a Protocol.

2.1.7 Limitation of Rights

Pursuant to section 286 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, except as expressly provided in the Deed of Settlement, the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, or in a Protocol, a Protocol does not, of itself, have the effect of granting, creating, or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, land held, managed, or administered under the Conservation Act 1987 or a statute listed in the First Schedule of that Act.

3 Implementation and communication

3.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Rūnanga and its Papatipu Rūnanga on a continuing basis by:

a) maintaining at the conservancy level, with the assistance of Te Rūnanga, information provided on Papatipu Rūnanga, their office holders and addresses; and

b) providing reasonable opportunities for Te Rūnanga and Papatipu Rūnanga to meet with Department managers and staff.

3.2 The Protocols provide for ongoing implementation of a range of matters, as well as Specific Projects which will require resourcing. It is not intended that all of the Specific Projects listed in these Protocols will be implemented in any one year. Implementation will be over time. Where these Protocols refer to Specific Projects that require resourcing, their implementation will be subject to provision being made in the relevant conservancy business plan. The process for the Department implementing any particular Specific Project in a business year will be as follows:

a) The Department will meet with Te Rūnanga in each conservancy and at Regional level annually to identify priorities for undertaking Specific Projects as listed in these protocols for the upcoming business year;

b) The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process at the conservancy and regional levels and considered along with other priorities;

c) The decision on whether any Specific Projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and the Regional General Manager;

d) The Department will advise Te Rūnanga of the outcome of this process; and

e) Te Rūnanga and the Department will then meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan for implementation of the Specific Projects in that business year, in accordance with the resources which have been allocated in the business plan. The Department will apply the allocated resources to give effect to that work plan, subject to unforeseen management requirements which may arise from time to time, such as emergencies, adverse weather, staff shortages or reallocation of resources directed by the Minister.
3.3 The Department will:

a) Meet with Te Rūnanga to review implementation of these Protocols and to deal with the matters in clause 3.2; four times per annum, unless otherwise agreed, in each conservancy, twice per annum at regional level, and at least once per annum at Chief Executive level;

b) As far as reasonably practicable, train relevant staff on these Protocols and provide ongoing training as required; and

c) As far as reasonably practicable, brief Conservation Board and NZCA members on these Protocols and the Ngāi Tahu Settlement, and provide ongoing information as required.

4 Cultural materials

4.1 For the purpose of these Protocols, cultural materials are defined as:

i plants, plant materials; and

ii materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds,

to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, and which are important to Ngāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

4.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering of cultural materials.

4.3 The Department will:

a) Have particular regard to Te Rūnanga’s cultural use policy (Kawa Hua Taiao) as it relates to the Department’s activities, and other relevant Te Rūnanga statements of policy produced from time to time.

b) Consider requests from members of Ngāi Tahu Whānui for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the appropriate legislation.

c) Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Ngāi Tahu to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of Departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance or culling of species.

d) Consult with Te Rūnanga in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Ngāi Tahu persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes, to see if the cultural and scientific or other needs can be reconciled before the Department makes a decision in respect of those requests.

4.4 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to clause 3.2, work with Te Rūnanga to:

a) Develop and implement guidelines for each conservancy within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā that help define levels of customary use of cultural materials, and set conditions, after consideration of tikanga, to be met for gathering;

b) Identify local sources of plants and provide advice to Te Rūnanga with respect to the establishment by Te Rūnanga of cultivation sites; and

c) Establish Departmental cultural materials banks for cultural materials which have come into the Department’s possession, and guidelines for their use.
5 **Freshwater fisheries**

5.1 The Department has a statutory role in advocating the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally. Its advocacy for freshwater biota, aquatic habitats and fish passage in all areas is primarily taken via statutory planning processes provided by the Resource Management Act 1991.

5.2 Section 48B of the Conservation Act 1987 (inserted by section 305 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998) provides the power to promulgate regulations providing for customary Māori fishing rights with respect to freshwater fisheries within South Island Fisheries Waters. Pursuant to clause 12.14.11(e) of the Deed of Settlement such regulations are to be promulgated as soon as practicable, and in any event no later than two years after Settlement Date. Besides generally consulting with Te Rūnanga and providing for its participation in the conservation and management of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats, the Department will consult with, and have particular regard to the advice of, Te Rūnanga in its capacity as an Advisory Committee appointed under section 56 of the Conservation Act in all matters concerning the management and conservation by the Department of Conservation of Taonga Fish Species (as defined in section 297 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998) within the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area. This obligation does not derogate from the obligations of the Department under section 4 of the Conservation Act 1998 to give effect to the Treaty of Waitangi.

5.3 **Advisory Committee**

The Department will, in relation to the Taonga Fish Species and as far as reasonably practicable, provide the Advisory Committee with all relevant information to enable it to give informed advice, and will meet with the Advisory Committee at conservancy level as necessary to give effect to the Deed of Settlement and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

5.4 **Customary freshwater fisheries regulations**

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

a) Provide for Te Rūnanga participation in the development and promulgation of customary freshwater fishing regulations by:

   i) Establishing a joint working group;

   ii) Setting terms of reference for that working group;

   iii) Setting timelines for progress; and

   iv) Providing information to Te Rūnanga in a timely manner and allowing Te Rūnanga an opportunity to comment.

5.5 **Specific projects**

The Department will, subject to clause 3.2, work with Te Rūnanga to:

a) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to the promotion of compliance with customary freshwater fisheries regulations;

b) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to monitoring the efficacy of the customary freshwater fisheries regulations at regular intervals; and

   c) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to sharing accumulated management information and research data on customary freshwater fisheries with Te Rūnanga.
5.6 Other matters

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to provide for active participation by Te Rūnanga in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:

a) Seeking to identify areas for cooperation in advocacy, consistent with clause 9, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats; and

b) Consulting with Te Rūnanga in developing or contributing to research programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements. The Department confirms that it regards Te Rūnanga as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

5.7 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to clause 3.2, work with Te Rūnanga to:

a) Conduct research to establish and address ecosystem threats to specified customary freshwater fisheries including barriers to migration, habitat loss and exotic species interaction;

b) Contribute to the resolution of eel management issues, in particular, the administration of the fish passage regulations in the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations, the promotion of the installation of effective fish passes where necessary and monitoring of their effects, by participating in discussions with Te Rūnanga and Te Waka a Māui me ona Toka Mahi Tuna; and

c) Identify the need for, and where necessary prepare, management plans for freshwater fisheries management.

6 Culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu

6.1 As part of an integrated management regime, or because a species population has risen to become an ecological pest, it may from time to time be necessary for the Department to carry out a cull of a protected species under the Wildlife Act 1953. The Department recognises that Te Rūnanga is interested in such operations in the following ways:

a) the carrying out of such a cull where the species to be culled is causing or is likely to cause ecological damage to species or habitats of particular significance to Ngāi Tahu;

b) the methods to be used in such culls; and

c) cultural materials arising from the cull.

6.2 The Department will:

a) Have regard to any requests initiated by Te Rūnanga for the carrying out of culling operations;

b) Consult with, and have particular regard to the views of, Te Rūnanga before deciding to carry out a cull of protected species on land administered by the Department, in respect of the reasons for the cull and the method proposed to be used; and

c) In situations where either a Fish and Game Council or a Regional Council intend to carry out a cull of protected species or game bird and the Department has a statutory role in the process, request the relevant body to consult with Te Rūnanga before carrying out any such cull.
7 Historic resources

7.1 The Minister acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them. Liaison with Te Rūnanga is important in the management of those places containing sites of historic and cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu, including places of settlement, horticulture, natural resource harvesting, warfare, communication, and places of cultural and spiritual connection.

7.2 The Department notes that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Ngāi Tahu is a practice used by Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. Respecting the principle of confidentiality brings management difficulties of a particular kind. Where information is not available, management practices which (unintentionally) contravene the cultural value associated with a specific site, may be put in place. Where reasonably practicable, the Department will respect the principle of confidentiality that applies to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu. The primary responsibility for identifying and assessing Ngāi Tahu heritage values rests with Te Rūnanga.

7.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

a) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu values attaching to identified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department are respected by the Department, for example, by the Department giving consideration to impacts from visitor numbers, facilities and services;

b) Manage, as far as reasonably practicable, wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993;

c) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that when issuing concessions giving authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, those parties manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993;

d) Have particular regard to relevant Te Rūnanga policies, including those relating to Koiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites;

e) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it uses Ngāi Tahu’s cultural information only with the consent of Te Rūnanga; and

f) When issuing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using Ngāi Tahu’s cultural information.

7.4 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to clause 3.2, work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

a) Develop and implement guidelines for the identification, inventory and management by the Department of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu that take into consideration the traditional uses and practices of Ngāi Tahu and are, where reasonably practicable, consistent with Ngāi Tahu tikanga;

b) Identify and actively protect specified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga or other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu on land administered by the Department;
c) Develop and implement guidelines for the active protection of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu;

d) Identify cooperative projects covering a range of options for the protection and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu;

e) Develop and implement guidelines relating to the use of Ngāi Tahu’s knowledge of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance of Ngāi Tahu, including the use of this information by the Department; and

f) Consult with and seek participation from Te Rūnanga with respect to research, survey or inventory projects that relate specifically to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them.

8 Visitor and public information

8.1 In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department recognises the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

8.2 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to encourage respect for Ngāi Tahu values by:

a) As far as reasonably practicable, seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between Te Rūnanga, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars;

b) Consulting on the provision of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu;

c) Ensuring, as far as reasonably practicable, that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Rūnanga perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Ngāi Tahu, where appropriate, including the use of traditional Ngāi Tahu place names; and

d) Encouraging Te Rūnanga participation in the Department’s volunteer and conservation events programmes.

8.3 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to clause 3.2, work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

a) Develop and implement guidelines on the provision of information and interpretation facilities and services for visitors, so as to identify and consider issues of concern to Te Rūnanga;

b) Consider possibilities for Te Rūnanga to contribute to visitor appreciation of the cultural value of sites of cultural and historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department; and

c) Provide information to education providers, including kōhanga reo and kura kaupapa Māori, for the development of educational resources on conservation issues and associated Ngāi Tahu values.
9 Resource Management Act

9.1 Te Rūnanga and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:

a) wetlands;

b) riparian management;

c) effects on freshwater fish habitat;

d) water quality management;

e) protection of historic resources; and

f) protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

9.2 From time to time, Te Rūnanga and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in relation to any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.

9.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to discuss the general approach that will be taken by each of Te Rūnanga and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.

9.4 The Department will:

a) Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in clause 9.3(a) in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act.

b) Make non-confidential resource information available to Te Rūnanga to assist in improving the effectiveness of Resource Management Act advocacy work at the Papatipu Rūnanga level.

10 Amendment and review provisions from the Deed

10.1 Amendment and Cancellation of Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998:

a) Protocols may be amended or cancelled by the Minister of Conservation, from time to time at the initiative of either the Crown or Te Rūnanga;

b) The Minister of Conservation may amend or cancel Protocols only after consulting Te Rūnanga and having regard to its views; and

c) As soon as reasonably practicable after the amendment, or cancellation of a Protocol, the Minister of Conservation must notify such amendment, or cancellation in the Gazette.

Dated at Wellington this 26 day of July 2001

MATT ROBSON, for SANDRA LEE, Minister of Conservation.

(NZ Gazette 2001, page 2171)
### Appendix 2

#### Prescriptions for managing visitor management zones in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

See Map 4 of visitor management zones in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Urban</th>
<th>Rural</th>
<th>Front country</th>
<th>Backcountry-accessible and walk-in</th>
<th>Remote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General description</strong></td>
<td>• Areas inside or on the periphery of urban areas</td>
<td>• Remnant native forest, wetlands, marine reserves and historic or cultural sites in areas dominated by farmland and plantation forest</td>
<td>• Where the majority of visits occur; typically small areas, scattered within or on the periphery of large relatively natural areas</td>
<td>• Large-scale natural settings generally accessed first through front country</td>
<td>• Catchments beyond the backcountry zone, forming the wild lands in the interior of large protected areas, with basic low-use tracks, marked routes and huts in some places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Typically includes a historic or cultural site</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Includes the vicinity of main 'scenic' roads passing through public conservation lands</td>
<td>• Includes popular walks and tramps set within large-scale natural settings and/or that access other settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Often focused on a particular attraction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Accessibility</strong></td>
<td>• Enabled for people of most ages and abilities</td>
<td>• Typically via sealed and unsealed roads, and in some cases by boat</td>
<td>• Readily accessible areas, usually via sealed roads or scheduled ferry or air services</td>
<td>• People will have travelled some distance to reach these settings</td>
<td>• Typically 5 or more hours travel on foot from front country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enabled for people of most ages or abilities</td>
<td>• Mostly by car, but also tour buses and guided parties to some sites</td>
<td>• 'Backcountry accessible' focuses on unsealed roads, four-wheel drive roads, navigable waters and aircraft landing sites</td>
<td>• Access supported by air or watercraft in some areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Enabled for people of most ages and abilities</td>
<td>• Motorised ground access generally restricted to roads and designated routes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 'Backcountry walk-in' is focused beyond the influence of motorised access</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Predominant visitor groups</strong></td>
<td>• Short-stop travellers and day visitors</td>
<td>• Short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters</td>
<td>• Predominantly short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters</td>
<td>• Predominantly ‘backcountry comfort seekers’ and ‘backcountry adventurers’</td>
<td>• ‘Backcountry adventurers’ and ‘remoteness seekers’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Predominant destination categories</td>
<td>Facility setting</td>
<td>Desired visitor experience and interactions</td>
<td>Preferred maximum party size</td>
<td>Concessions operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban</td>
<td>Icon, Gateway and Local Treasure</td>
<td>High-standard footpaths, cycleways and modified landscapes and modified</td>
<td>Varying, from activities with large groups, time with small group/families, some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</td>
<td>50 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rural</td>
<td>Icon, Gateway and Local Treasure</td>
<td>Short walks, climbs and flat tracks with signs and information clear for users,</td>
<td>Generally some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</td>
<td>15 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front country</td>
<td>Icon, Gateway and Local Treasure</td>
<td>High-quality facilities, water and sanitation available,</td>
<td>Generally some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</td>
<td>50 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backcountry-accessible and walk-in</td>
<td>Predominantly Icon, Gateway and Backcountry</td>
<td>Evidence of control limited to essential signs and direction signs, barriers and warning signs</td>
<td>Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people, occasional encounters with organised groups and generally accepting of occasional intrusion of noise</td>
<td>8 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote</td>
<td>Predominantly Icon, Gateway and Backcountry</td>
<td>A range of facilities, including large groups, with signs and information clear for users,</td>
<td>Generally some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude</td>
<td>15 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backcountry</td>
<td>Predominantly Icon, Gateway and Backcountry</td>
<td>Evidence of control limited to essential signs and direction signs, barriers and warning signs</td>
<td>Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people, occasional encounters with organised groups and generally accepting of occasional intrusion of noise</td>
<td>8 people</td>
<td>Conforming concessions schedule – 15 people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 3

### Taonga species in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

#### Birds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Māori name</th>
<th>Common English name</th>
<th>Scientific name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kāhu</td>
<td>Australasian harrier</td>
<td><em>Circus approximans</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kākā</td>
<td>South Island kākā</td>
<td><em>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakī</td>
<td>black stilt</td>
<td><em>Himantopus novaezelandiae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kārarea</td>
<td>New Zealand falcon</td>
<td><em>Falco novaeseelandiae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>karoro</td>
<td>black-backed gull</td>
<td><em>Larus dominicanus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kea</td>
<td>kea</td>
<td><em>Nestor notabilis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōau</td>
<td>black shag</td>
<td><em>Phalacrocorax carbo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pied shag</td>
<td><em>Phalacrocorax varius varius</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>little shag</td>
<td><em>Phalacrocorax melanoleucus brevirostris</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koekoeā</td>
<td>long-tailed cuckoo</td>
<td><em>Eudynamys taitensis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōparapara or korimako</td>
<td>bellbird</td>
<td><em>Anthornis melanura melanura</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōtuku</td>
<td>white heron</td>
<td><em>Egretta alba</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōwhiohio</td>
<td>blue duck</td>
<td><em>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kūkupa/Kererū</td>
<td>New Zealand wood pigeon</td>
<td><em>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kururwhenga/Kuruwhengi</td>
<td>New Zealand shoveller</td>
<td><em>Anas rynchotis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miromiro</td>
<td>South Island tomtit</td>
<td><em>Petroica macrocephala macrocephala</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pārera</td>
<td>grey duck</td>
<td><em>Anas superciliosa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīhoihoi</td>
<td>New Zealand pipit</td>
<td><em>Anthus novaeseelandiae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīpīwharauroa</td>
<td>shining cuckoo</td>
<td><em>Chrysococcyx lucidus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pīwakawaka</td>
<td>South Island fantail</td>
<td><em>Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poaka</td>
<td>pied stilt</td>
<td><em>Himantopus himantopus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pūtakitaki</td>
<td>paradise shelduck</td>
<td><em>Tadorna variegata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riroriro</td>
<td>grey warbler</td>
<td><em>Gerygone igata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruru koukou</td>
<td>morepork</td>
<td><em>Ninox novaeseelandiae</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tara terns</td>
<td>terns</td>
<td><em>Sternia spp.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tētē</td>
<td>grey teal</td>
<td><em>Anas gracilis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tititipounamu</td>
<td>South Island rifleman</td>
<td><em>Acanthisitta chloris chloris</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Māori name</th>
<th>Common English name</th>
<th>Scientific name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>koeke</td>
<td>common shrimp</td>
<td>Palaemon affinis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōkopu/Hawai</td>
<td>giant bully</td>
<td>Gobiomorphus gobioides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paraki/ngaiore</td>
<td>common smelt</td>
<td>Retropinna retropinna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piripipōhatu</td>
<td>torrentfish</td>
<td>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taiwharu</td>
<td>giant kōkopu</td>
<td>Galaxias argenteus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Plants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Māori name</th>
<th>Common English name</th>
<th>Scientific name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aruhe</td>
<td>fernroot (bracken)</td>
<td>Pteridium aquilinum var. esculentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horoeka</td>
<td>lancewood</td>
<td>Pseudopanax crassifolius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>houhi</td>
<td>mountain ribbonwood</td>
<td>Hoheria lyallii and H. glabata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāpuka</td>
<td>broadleaf</td>
<td>Griselinia littoralis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>korokio korokio</td>
<td>korokio/wire-netting bush</td>
<td>Corokia cotoneaster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>koromiko/kōkōmuka</td>
<td>koromiko</td>
<td>Hebe salicifolia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kowhai/kēhai</td>
<td>kowhai</td>
<td>Sophora microphylla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mānuka/kahikātoa</td>
<td>tea-tree</td>
<td>Leptospermum scoparium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rātā</td>
<td>southern rātā</td>
<td>Metrosideros umbellata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rautāwhiri/kēhūhū</td>
<td>black matipo/Māpou</td>
<td>Pittosporum tenuifolium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taramea</td>
<td>speargrass/spaniard</td>
<td>Aciphylla spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tawai</td>
<td>beech</td>
<td>Nothofagus spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toatoa</td>
<td>mountain toatoa/celery pine</td>
<td>Phyllocladus alpinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutu</td>
<td>tutu</td>
<td>Coriaria spp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wharanki</td>
<td>mountain flax</td>
<td>Phormium cookianum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wīwī</td>
<td>rushes</td>
<td>Juncus all indigenous Juncus spp and Juncus maritimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ecosystem units in and adjoining Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

This list of ecosystem units in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has been identified from the Department’s national list of around 1000 ecosystem units, which represent the full range of New Zealand’s terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems.

See also section 1.2.1 Natural Heritage and the Department’s website www.doc.govt.nz.

### Ecosystem units wholly or partly within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ecosystem unit</th>
<th>Main species and habitat types within the national park</th>
<th>Key values, threats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasman River PEU</td>
<td>Braided riverbed, gravel/stonefield, tussockland, herbfield</td>
<td>Wrybill, banded dotterel, black-fronted tern, oystercatcher, kaki, black-billed gull, <em>Isolepis basilaris</em>, <em>Crassularia sp.</em>, <em>Carmichaelia kirkii</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Godley River PEU</td>
<td>Extensive braided riverbed habitat with short tussock grassland on older, more stable terraces, gravel/stonefield, tussockland, herbfield</td>
<td>Kaki, wrybill, banded dotterel, black-fronted tern, kaka, <em>Galaxias prognathus</em> “waitaki”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aoraki EU</td>
<td>A heavily glacial-influenced landscape with moraines, névés, glaciers, glacial lakes, alpine scrub, sub-alpine tussock, herbfield, mixed forest, open riverbed habitats</td>
<td>Pīwauwau/rock wren <em>Ranunculus godleyanus</em>, <em>Olearia filubriata</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hooker EU</td>
<td>A heavily glacial-influenced landscape with moraines, névés, glaciers, and glacial lakes; some low, mixed forest at low elevation, alpine scrub, and sub-alpine tussock grassland and herbfield; open riverbed habitats</td>
<td>Pīwauwau/rock wren <em>Ranunculus godleyanus</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Ecosystem units adjacent to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ecosystem Unit</th>
<th>Main species and habitat types</th>
<th>Key values, threats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasman River PEU</td>
<td>Open braided river habitat above Lake Pukaki</td>
<td>Key breeding and feeding habitats for braided river bird species: wrybill, banded dotterel, black-fronted tern, oystercatcher, kaki, black-billed gull, <em>Isolepis basilaris</em>, <em>Crassularia sp.</em>, <em>Carmichaelia kirkii</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Godley River PEU</td>
<td>Extensive braided riverbed habitat with short tussock grassland on older, more stable terraces</td>
<td>Kaki breeding/release site in lower reaches, wrybill, banded dotterel, black-fronted tern, kaka, <em>Galaxias prognathus</em> “waitaki”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dobson River (not ranked)</td>
<td>Sequence through mid-elevation silver beech forests to sub-alpine scrub and grasslands to high alpine environments of the Main Divide; several glacial lakes and extensive braided river valley; high species values and recent intensive management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Landsborough EMU</td>
<td>Sequence through mid-elevation silver beech forests to sub-alpine scrub and grasslands to high alpine environments of the Main Divide; several glacial lakes and extensive braided river valley; high species values and recent intensive management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copland PEU</td>
<td>Sub-catchment containing conifer-broadleaved forest sequence typical of beech-gap over wide altitudinal range, with montane scrub, sub-alpine grasslands, and alpine tops rising to Mount Sefton on the Main Divide. Strongly browser-modified in past</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whataroa PEU</td>
<td>Encompasses a sequence of extensive lowland to montane conifer-broadleaved forests, montane scrub, sub-alpine grasslands, and high alpine tops on the Main Divide; two moderate sized glacial lakes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 5

### List of Geopreservation Sites in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in the Park are identified below. The Geopreservation sites are identified as sites of international, national or regional/local importance by the Geological Society of New Zealand.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Geopreservation sites</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park</td>
<td>Of national significance because of the protected land status and international significance due to Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasman Glacier Blue Lakes</td>
<td>Blue lakes, south Haupapa/Tasman Glacier. Significance: B1 – an excellent and easily accessible example of moraine dammed lakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasman River Outwash Plain</td>
<td>Glacial – fluvio-glacial outwash plain at lower Tasman River. Significance A1: One of the biggest fluvio-glacial outwash plains in New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celmisia Flat Moraine Wall</td>
<td>Celmisia Flat on Ball Shelter Road – southwest Tasman Glacier. Significance A1: a very good example of a moraine wall. Hazards: erosion – the wall is slipping into the valley due to removal of support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ben Ohau vein, folds and fault structures</td>
<td>Near Mueller Hut in the Sealy Range approximately 3 km NW of the Hermitage. Veins, folds and faults in metagreywackes of the Torlesse Supergroup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copland Pass Schist Section</td>
<td>East of Nōti Hinetamataa/Copland Pass. A section containing both soft sediment and metamorphic structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haeckel Fold, Murchison Valley</td>
<td>West of Haeckel Peak, Murchison Valley, Make Brun. An example of macroscopic folding – large scale fold in the Torlesse terrane</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 6

Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand World Heritage Area – Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

Brief synthesis

Located in the south-west corner of New Zealand’s South Island, Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand covers 10% of New Zealand’s landmass (2.6 million hectares) and is spread over a 450 km strip extending inland 40–90 km from the Tasman Sea. The property exhibits many classic examples of the tectonic, climatic, and glacial processes that have shaped the earth. The great Alpine Fault divides the region and marks the contact zone of the Indo-Australian and Pacific continental plates making it one of only three segments of the world’s major plate boundaries on land. Collision between the two tectonic plates constructs the main mountain range, known as the Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana, which rise to nearly 4000 m altitude within a mere 30 km from the sea.

Overwhelmingly a mountainous wilderness, including significant piedmont surfaces in the north-west glaciation, both historic and modern, is a dominant landscape feature. Spectacular landforms include: the 15 fiords which deeply indent the Fiordland coastline; a sequence of 13 forested marine terraces progressively uplifted more than 1000 m along the Waitutu coastline over the past million years; a series of large lake-filled glacial troughs along the south-eastern margin; the Franz Josef and Fox Glaciers which descend into temperate rainforest; and spectacular moraines of ultramafic rock extending to the Tasman coastline.

As the largest and least modified area of New Zealand’s natural ecosystems, the flora and fauna has become the world’s best intact modern representation of the ancient biota of Gondwana. The distribution of these plants and animals is inextricably linked to the dynamic nature of the physical processes at work in the property. The region contains outstanding examples of plant succession after glaciation, with sequences along altitudinal (sea level to permanent snowline), latitudinal (wet west to the dry east), and chronological gradients (fresh post-glacial surfaces to old Pleistocene moraines).

It is the combination of geological and climatic processes, the resultant landforms, the unique biota displaying evolutionary adaptation over a diverse range of climatic and altitudinal gradients, all in a relatively pristine state, that give Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand its exceptional and outstanding natural characteristics.

Criterion (vii): Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand contains many of the natural features which contribute to New Zealand’s international reputation for superlative landscapes: its highest mountains, longest glaciers, tallest forests, wildest rivers and gorges, most rugged coastlines and deepest fiords and lakes, as well as the remnant of an extinct volcano in Solander Island. The temperate rainforests of the property are unmatched in their composition, extent and intactness by any such forests anywhere in the world.

From the vast wilderness of Fiordland in the south to the spectacular upthrust of the Southern Alps in the north, the landscapes are world class for the sheer excellence of their scenic beauty. It is an area of magnificent primeval vistas: snow-capped mountains, glaciers, forests, tussock grasslands, lakes, rivers, wetlands and over 1000 km of wilderness coastline. Only traces of human influence are evident and then mainly in peripheral areas.
Criterion (viii): Te Wāhipounamu South West New Zealand is considered to be the best modern example of the primitive taxa of Gondwanaland seen in modern ecosystems – and as such the property is of global significance. The progressive break-up of the southern super-continent of Gondwanaland is considered one of the most important events in the earth’s evolutionary history. New Zealand’s separation before the appearance of marsupials and other mammals, and its long isolation since, were key factors enabling the survival of the ancient Gondwanan biota on the islands of New Zealand to a greater degree than elsewhere. The living representatives of this ancient biota include flightless kiwis, carnivorous land snails, 14 species of podocarp and genera or beech.

The South West is also an outstanding example of the impact of the Pleistocene epoch of earth history. Ice-carved landforms created by these “Ice Age” glaciers dominate the mountain lands, and are especially well-preserved in the harder, plutonic igneous rocks of Fiordland. Glacier-cut firths, lakes, deep U-shaped valleys, hanging valleys, cirques, and ice-shorn spurs are graphic illustrations of the powerful influence of these glaciers on the landscape. Depositional landforms of Pleistocene glacial origin are also important, especially in Westland, west of the Alpine Fault. Chronological sequences of outwash gravels, and moraine ridges in elegant curves and loops, outline the shapes of both former piedmont glaciers and Holocene “post-glacial” valley glaciers.

Criterion (ix): A continuum of largely unmodified habitats, the property exhibits a high degree of geodiversity and biodiversity. Fresh-water, temperate rainforest and alpine ecosystems are all outstandingly well represented over an extensive array of landforms and across wide climatic and altitudinal gradients. Notable examples of ongoing biological processes can be found in the large expanses of temperate rainforest, the plant succession after glacial retreat, soil/plant chronosequences on beach ridges, plant succession on alluvial terraces, vegetation gradients around the margins of glacial lakes and ecotypic differentiation of plants on ultramafic soils. The extensive and little modified freshwater habitats, the impressive diversity of alpine ecosystems, extensive alpine plant endemism, and ongoing evolution associated with long-standing geographical isolation of animal populations, like the kiwi taxa of South-Westland, are further examples of ongoing biological evolution.

While there is little permanent physical evidence of past human interaction with the natural environment, tangāta whenua (the indigenous people who have customary authority in a place) have long associations with the area which was significant to them for natural resources, particularly pounamu (nephrite). European associations are more recent and initially based on natural resource exploitation. The predominant human uses today are associated with sustainable tourism.

Criterion (x): The habitats of Te Wāhipounamu contain an extensive range of New Zealand’s unusual endemic fauna, a fauna which reflects its long evolutionary isolation and absence of mammalian predators. The property contains the entire wild population of the rare and endangered takahē (Notornis mantelli), the entire population of the South Island subspecies of brown kiwi (Apteryx australis), New Zealand’s rarest Kiwi, the rowi (Apteryx rowi), the only significant remaining populations of the seriously declining mohua/yellowhead (Mohoua ochrocephala), the only large populations remaining of kākā and kākāriki/yellow-crowned parakeet, and the only remaining population of pateke/Fiordland brown teal in the South Island.

The world’s rarest and heaviest parrot, kākāpō (Strigops habroptilus) survived in Fiordland until the early 1980s. It is now thought to be extinct on the mainland and its survival depends on careful management of a limited number of offshore island populations.
Integrity

Te Wāhipounamu encompasses many complete ‘mountains-to-the-sea’ or ‘mountains-to-inland basins’ landscape sequences. These landscapes cover the full range of erosion and deposition landforms of Pleistocene and modern glacial origin. The 2.6 million hectare property represents the 10 percent of New Zealand that is least disturbed or modified by human settlement, and is largely in its natural state giving it a high degree of integrity. The property boundaries encompass all the values of the property which comprises a nearly contiguous network of reserved land covering much of the south-west of the South Island. The boundaries are closely and realistically aligned with the main features of the area. The property includes four national parks (Fiordland, Mount Aspiring, Mount Cook and Westland) covering 1,725,437 ha, two nature reserves, three scientific reserves, 13 scenic reserves, four wildlife management reserves, five ecological areas, conservation areas and one private reserve (20 ha). Bordered by other protected public conservation land the property has an effective buffer zone providing further protection for the natural values.

The property contains nearly 2 million hectares of temperate rainforest on an extraordinary range of landforms and soils – including altitudinal, latitudinal, west-to east rainfall gradients, and age sequences associated with glacial retreat, prograding coastlines and marine terraces uplifted progressively over the last million years. In particular, the rainforest contains the best examples in the Southern Hemisphere of one of the most ancient groups of gymnosperms, the Podocarpaceae, which range from the densely-packed 50m-high rimus of the South Westland terraces to the world’s smallest conifer, the prostrate pygmy pine.

The relatively recent introductions of alien browsing mammals and predators, such as rodents and mustelids, have resulted in localised extinctions, range reductions, and significant declines in abundance of some indigenous biota. These threats will remain, but with ongoing intervention can be managed and should not impact significantly on the integrity of the area. There is some evidence of the effects of global warming on the permanent icefields and glaciers in the region.

The international profile of the area as a visitor destination places pressure on some of the main tourist attractions within the wider site. These pressures are being managed to provide visitor access but only where the conservation values at these sites are protected.

Protection and management requirements

A comprehensive array of statutes and regulations protect the property, the most important being the National Parks Act 1980 and the Conservation Act 1987. These two pieces of legislation along with the Reserves Act 1977 are the principal means of ensuring legal protection for the property. The land encompassed by the boundaries of the property, with one small exception, is Crown (Government and the people of New Zealand) owned and it is administered by the Department of Conservation. The property is a reformulation of two previous properties inscribed on the World Heritage List in 1986; Fiordland National Park and Westland/Mt Cook National Park. This property adds 1.2 million ha of the intervening land, almost doubling the size of the area inscribed in 1986 and including almost 70% of the area under national park status, and greatly adding to the overall universal value, wilderness quality and integrity of the property.

The Department of Conservation has a legislative mandate for the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations.
The Department of Conservation is obligated through its legislation to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. In practice this implies a partnership agreement with tangata whenua that have mana whenua (prestige, authority over the land) over the area. This involves an annual business planning process with the Ngāi Tahu iwi (the overarching tribal authority for tangata whenua). This process gives Ngāi Tahu the opportunity to engage in and contribute to the operational management of the property.

The particularly high natural values of the property, along with the World Heritage status, mean that this area is a priority area for ongoing management. The area covers four separate Conservancies, although they all report to one Manager. The Department’s organisational structure therefore also provides for integrated management of the area.

There is no single management strategy for the area, although under the National Parks Act, each national park is required to have a national park management plan and there are also a number of conservancy conservation strategies that acknowledge the values of the regions comprising the large site, as well as the property’s World Heritage status. Together these planning documents set strategic directions for the integrated management of this property. These are statutory documents formulated through a public consultation process. The national park management plans are prepared by the Department of Conservation (the administering authority for all national parks in NZ) and approved by the New Zealand Conservation Authority, in accordance with the General Policy for National Parks (a policy document that guides the implementation of the National Parks Act, also prepared and administered by the Department of Conservation).

The principal uses of the property are nature conservation, nature based recreation and tourism and sustainable small-scale natural resource utilisation. Impacts from tourism at key sites and introduced species are being addressed by management actions and continue to be a concern. Traditional use of vegetation by native Māori people, fishing for whitebait, recreational hunting and short-term pastoral leases are closely regulated and do not result in significant impacts.

Invasive species are the biggest impact on the property, despite their impacts being restricted to small areas of the property. Population increases of red deer as well as impacts from other browsing mammals such as wapiti, fallow deer, goat, chamois and tahr have caused severe damage in some parts of the property, in particular threatening the integrity of the forest and alpine ecosystems. Commercial hunting activities have assisted in reducing numbers and impacts from these species. Australian brush-tailed possum, rabbits, mustelids and rodents also impact habitats and indigenous birds. The Department of Conservation has control programmes in place and National Parks general policy seeks to eradicate new incursions and eradicate (where possible) or reduce the range of existing invasive species.
Appendix 7

International Status – Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve

The Aoraki Mackenzie International Dark Sky Reserve (the Reserve) is comprised of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and the Mackenzie Basin of New Zealand’s Te Waipounamu/South Island. Outdoor lighting controls were first put into place in the area during the early 1980s. They have not only helped minimise light pollution for the nearby Mt. John Observatory, but also conserve energy, protect wildlife and make the area a popular stargazing destination for tourists.

The Reserve is located in Te Manahuna/the Mackenzie Basin in Te Waipounamu/the South Island of New Zealand in an area bounded by Kā Tiritiri o te Moana/the Southern Alps in the west and the Two Thumb Range in the east, and includes the Mackenzie Basin and the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in the region of Waitaha/Canterbury. Villages are located at Lake Tekapo, Twizel and Aoraki/Mount Cook.

Te Manahuna/the Mackenzie has outstanding landscapes of exceptional scenic beauty with grasslands providing vistas of mountains, glaciers, lakes and rivers. The flora and fauna are of special interest with both protected and endangered species. Light pollution is very low and atmospheric transparency is excellent. For hundreds of years Māori visited the area to gather food and to observe the regular “night visitors” in the sky.

The natural night has played a critical role in the area’s history as its first residents, the Māori, not only used the night sky to navigate to the island but also integrated astronomy and star lore into their culture and daily lives. The reserve seeks to honor that history by keeping the night sky a protected and integral part of the area’s natural and cultural landscape. It is a perfect place to protect and honour those traditions as the reserve’s Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin has the clearest, darkest and the most spectacular night sky in New Zealand.

Lake Tekapo is located close to the premier observatory in New Zealand and under one of the darkest skies in the world. Astro-tourism has attracted many people to Lake Tekapo which will soon boast an astro-feature sundial in the Village centre.

Mount Cook Village sits on the border between Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin and the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park of some 70,696 hectares. This great alpine park has the highest mountains and the largest glaciers in New Zealand. Aoraki/Mount Cook was formally designated a national park in 1953 from reserves established as early as 1887 to protect the area’s significant vegetation and landscape.

The Reserve has two cores, the primary one at Mt John and the secondary one at Mount Cook Airport. Mt John University Observatory was established at Lake Tekapo by the University of Canterbury in 1965. After extensive site testing funded by the U.S. National Science Foundation at Tekapo and elsewhere in New Zealand, Mt John University Observatory has became the base for astronomical research. We have made extensive night-sky brightness measurements during new moon since mid-2011, and show that the night sky brightness in Te Manahuna/Mackenzie Basin and at Aoraki/Mount Cook is exceptionally dark by international standards. The air is also very transparent and unpolluted, making this an ideal location for stargazing. The number of perfectly clear nights at Tekapo is 21 per cent; 32 per cent of the nights are unsuitable for observing, and the remaining 47 per cent are partially clear or fully clear for part of the night, such that some observing and star gazing may be possible.

The Dark Sky Reserve has ‘Gold’ level status, meaning that the skies are almost totally free from light pollution, and making it one of the best stargazing sites on Earth.
**Closing words**


Reproduced from www.online-literature.com/samuel-butler/canterbury-settlement/5/

There we lay on the shingle-bed, at the top of the range, in the broiling noonday; for even at that altitude it was very hot, and there was no cloud in the sky and very little breeze. I saw that if we wanted a complete view we must climb to the top of a peak which, though only a few hundred feet higher than where we were lying, nevertheless hid a great deal from us. I accordingly began the ascent, having arranged with my companion that if there was country to be seen he should be called, if not, he should be allowed to take it easy. Well, I saw snowy peak after snowy peak come in view as the summit in front of me narrowed, but no mountains were visible higher or grander than what I had already seen.

Suddenly, as my eyes got on a level with the top, so that I could see over, I was struck almost breathless by the wonderful mountain that burst on my sight. The effect was startling. It rose towering in a massy parallelogram, disclosed from top to bottom in the cloudless sky, far above all the others. It was exactly opposite to me, and about the nearest in the whole range. So you may imagine that it was indeed a splendid spectacle.

It has been calculated by the Admiralty people at 13,200 feet, but Mr. Haast, a gentleman of high scientific attainments in the employ of Government as geological surveyor, says that it is considerably higher. For my part, I can well believe it. Mont Blanc himself is not so grand in shape, and does not look so imposing. Indeed, I am not sure that Mount Cook is not the finest in outline of all the snowy mountains that I have ever seen. It is not visible from many places on the eastern side of the island, and the front ranges are so lofty that they hide it. It can be seen from the top of Banks Peninsula, and for a few hundred yards somewhere near Timaru, and over a good deal of the Mackenzie country, but nowhere else on the eastern side of this settlement, unless from a great height. It is, however, well worth any amount of climbing to see.

No one can mistake it. If a person says he THINKS he has seen Mount Cook, you may be quite sure that he has not seen it. The moment it comes into sight the exclamation is, “That is Mount Cook!” – not “That MUST be Mount Cook!” There is no possibility of mistake. There is a glorious field for the members of the Alpine Club here. Mount Cook awaits them, and he who first scales it will be crowned with undying laurels: for my part, though it is hazardous to say this of any mountain, I do not think that any human being will ever reach its top.